AKENG44_Escalade Page 1 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM

Cadillac
Escalade

Owner's Manual

# Table of Contents

**How to Use this Manual ..... 3**
**Important Safety Precautions ..... 5**
Section 1
**Instrumentation and Controls ..... 21**
Section 2
**Seats and Restraints..... 163**
Section 3
**Starting and Operating Instructions ..... 225**
Section 4
**Service and Maintenance ..... 287**
Section 5
**Problems on the Road ..... 353**
**Index ..... 393**

04AKENG44

# Important Notes About this Manual

We thank you for choosing a General Motors product, and we want to assure you of our continuing commitment to your motoring pleasure and satisfaction.

This manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle. Keep it with the vehicle when sold, to provide the next owner with important operating, safety and maintenance information.

Environment-friendly and recycled materials were used in the development and manufacture of your vehicle. The production methods used to make your vehicle are also environment-friendly.

Production waste is recycled, with some of the waste material recovered for re-use. Water requirements have been reduced to help conserve natural resources.

All information, illustrations and specifications in this manual are based on the latest product information available at the time of printing. We reserve the right to make changes in the product without further notice.

The illustrations throughout the manual are typical and are not intended to be exact representations of any part of your vehicle.

Please be aware that the vehicle you purchased may not be equipped with each option that is explained in this manual.

This Owner's Manual is supplemented by a "Maintenance Schedule and Warranty and Owner Assistance Information" booklet. Although we feel that this Owner's Manual is complete, in that it covers the more important vehicle operating information, it is most valuable when used with the Maintenance Schedule.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 3 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



When it comes to service, keep in mind that your dealer knows your vehicle best and is committed to your complete satisfaction. Your dealer invites you to return for all of your service needs both during and after the warranty period.

Should you have any concern that has not been handled to your satisfaction, follow the steps outlined in the "Maintenance Schedule and Warranty and Owner Assistance Information" booklet.

FOR CONTINUING SATISFACTION AND QUALITY, KEEP YOUR GM VEHICLE ALL GM. GENERAL MOTORS PARTS ARE IDENTIFIED BY ONE OF THESE TRADEMARKS:

ACDelco.
GM Parts
GM | Goodwrench.
GM Accessories

Use this manual to learn about the features of your new vehicle and how they operate.

The manual is intended to be used as a reference guide to help you to quickly identify and use the various features of your vehicle. For this reason, the manual is organized according to feature location as opposed to feature operation.

It also includes some very important safety and maintenance information and even deals with some problems you may have while driving.

This manual is divided into five sections:

- **Section 1: Instrumentation and Controls**

To get a general understanding of how the content of this manual is organized, imagine yourself sitting in the driver's seat. Your attention is first focused on the instrument panel directly in front of you, then up and out to the mirrors, windows and doors and continuing back around the vehicle to the rear cargo area, then up to the overhead area and the roof. The content of this manual is organized to follow this order. The vast majority of your vehicle's instruments and controls are built into these areas, and are discussed first in this manual, in Section 1.

# How to Use this Manual

- **Section 2: Seats and Restraints**

  Next, focus on the center of your vehicle: the seats and safety belts. Information about these features and about your vehicle's air bag system is covered in Section 2. Section 2 also includes any information pertaining to child restraints.

- **Section 3: Starting and Operating Instructions**

  Once you have been familiarized with your vehicle's instruments, controls, seats and restraint systems in Sections 1 and 2, Section 3 outlines your vehicle's starting and operating instructions. This section includes information about your keys and keyless entry (if equipped), about the ignition and vehicle starting, and about the transmission, transfer case (if equipped), parking, traction, steering, brake, and suspension systems. It also covers your vehicle's specific loading and towing capabilities.

- **Section 4: Service and Maintenance**

  The Service and Maintenance section:

  - contains fuel information
  - helps you locate the various components in your vehicle's engine compartment
  - offers basic maintenance and fluid information for the major, easily-accessible engine components (e.g., oil, coolant, transmission fluid, power steering fluid, brake fluid, refrigerant, washer fluid, battery)

AKENG44_Escalade Page 5 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



- contains information about tire inflation, inspection, rotation and replacement
- locates and describes your vehicle's fuses and circuit breakers
- contains some bulb replacement instructions and specifications
- includes major component specifications and capacities

- **Section 5: Problems on the Road**

  This section tells you how to handle certain problems you may have while driving. It covers:

  - jump starting your vehicle
  - towing your vehicle
  - engine overheating
  - changing a flat tire

Each section begins with a brief table of contents to help you locate the information you want.

# Important Safety Precautions

### CAUTION AND NOTICE BOXES

CAUTIONS and NOTICES alert you to conditions that may result in injury, or that may damage your vehicle.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Means: This can hurt people.

***NOTICE***

Means: This can damage your vehicle.

### Seating Position

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Do not adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is moving. The seat could jerk and cause a loss of control.

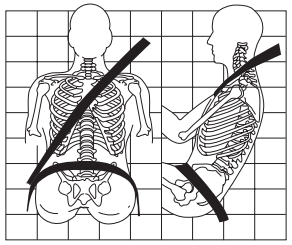
Sitting in a reclined position when your vehicle is in motion can be dangerous. Even if you buckle up, your safety belts can't do their job when the seatback is excessively reclined.

### Safety Belts

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Always wear your safety belt. Be sure it is adjusted properly at all times.

Do not let anyone ride where they cannot wear a safety belt properly. If you are in a crash and you are not wearing a safety belt, you can be seriously injured or killed. In the same crash, you might not be injured if you are buckled up. Always fasten your safety belt, and check that your passengers' belts are fastened properly, too.



**⚠ *CAUTION (Continued)***

Wearing a safety belt improperly could cause serious injury.

The lap part of the belt should be worn low and snug on the hips, just touching the thighs. In a crash, this applies force to the strong pelvic bones, and you would be less likely to slide under the lap belt. If you slid under it, the belt would apply force to your abdomen. This could cause serious or even fatal injuries.

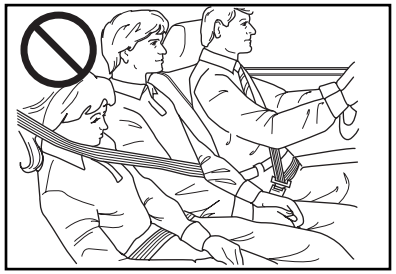
**⚠ *CAUTION (Continued)***

Wear your belt fitted closely against the body. Do not wear your shoulder belt under your arm. Make sure the belt is not twisted across your body.

You could be seriously injured if your belt is buckled in the wrong place. Always buckle your belt into the buckle nearest you.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces.

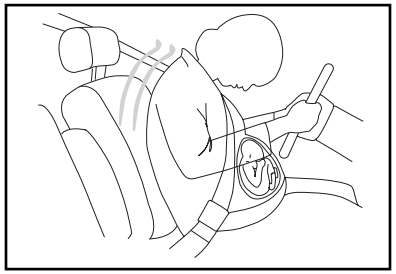


**⚠ *CAUTION (Continued)***

A safety belt must be used by only one person at a time. Do not allow two children to share the same belt.

Accident statistics show that children are safer if they are restrained in the rear seat.

# Important Safety Precautions



**⚠ *CAUTION (Continued)***

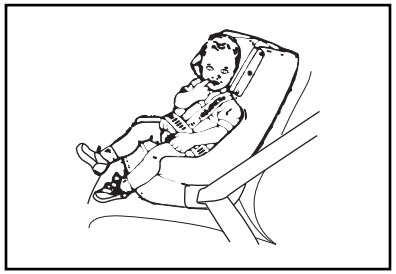
A pregnant woman should wear a lap-shoulder belt, and the lap portion should be worn as low as possible throughout the pregnancy.

**Air Bags**

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Both the safety belt restraint system and the air bag restraint system are designed to best protect adults.

Anyone who is up against, or very close to, an inflating air bag could be seriously injured or killed.



**⚠ *CAUTION (Continued)***

Be sure that if children are too small to be well restrained by the safety belt system, that they are secured in an appropriate child restraint.

The presence of an airbag is not a substitute for a safety belt and is only effective in conjunction with the safety belts.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 9 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



**⚠ CAUTION *(Continued)***

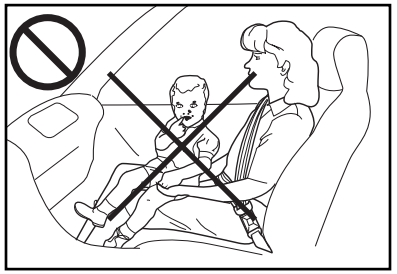
Air bags are designed to be used with the safety belts. Even with an air bag, if you are in a crash and not wearing a safety belt, your injuries could be much worse.

If you are too close to an inflating air bag, it could seriously injure you. Safety belts help keep you in position in case an air bag inflates in a collision. The driver should sit as far back as possible while still able to maintain control of the vehicle.

The path of an inflating air bag must be kept clear of any objects at all times.

**⚠ CAUTION *(Continued)***

When an air bag inflates, it leaves dust in the air. This dust could cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing trouble. To avoid this, everyone in the vehicle should get out as soon as it is safe to do so. If you are unable to get out of the vehicle, then open a window or door.

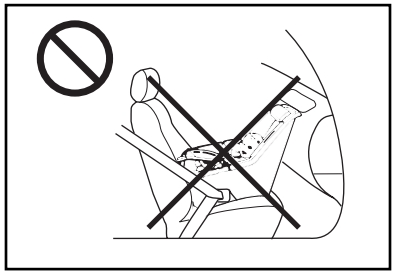


**Children and Safety Restraints**

**⚠ CAUTION**

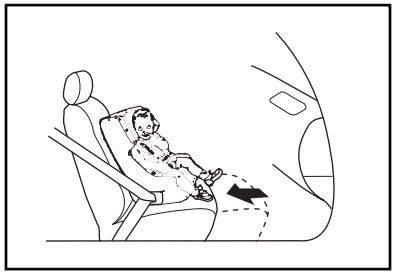
Never hold a baby in your arms while riding in a vehicle. During a crash a baby will become so heavy you can't hold it. For example, in a crash at only 40 km/h, a 5.5 kg baby will suddenly become a 110 kg force on your arms. The baby would be almost impossible to hold. Secure the baby in an infant restraint.

# Important Safety Precautions



**⚠ CAUTION *(Continued)***

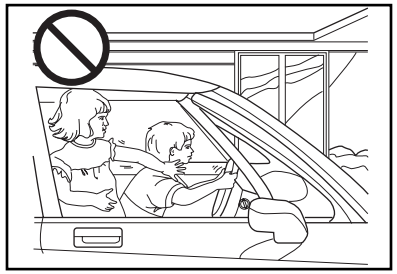
A rear-facing child restraint in the front seat could be pushed into the seatback by the front passenger's air bag if it inflates. A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured if this happens. In vehicles with the front passenger's inflatable restraint system, always secure a rear-facing child restraint in the rear seat.



**⚠ CAUTION**

Infants who must use rear-facing child restraints cannot ride safely in passenger air bag-equipped vehicles that do not have rear seats.

If, however, you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the front passenger seat, be sure to move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go.



**Leaving Your Vehicle**

**⚠ CAUTION**

Avoid leaving your vehicle while the engine is running.

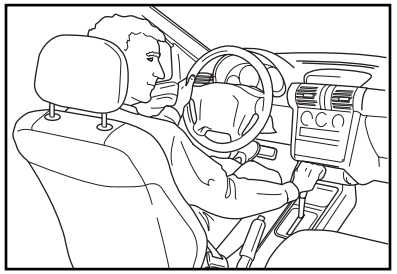
Do not leave children in the vehicle with the ignition key. They could operate the power windows or other controls and could even make the vehicle move. A child or others could be injured or even killed.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 11 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



**⚠ CAUTION *(Continued)***

It is very dangerous to leave children inside the vehicle for any extended period of time - especially in hot weather. When you leave the vehicle, take your children with you.



**Vehicles with Automatic Transmissions**

**⚠ CAUTION**

If your vehicle is equipped with an automatic transmission, observe the following precautions to ensure proper and safe operation. Otherwise, the vehicle may move suddenly and/or cause an accident.

**⚠ CAUTION *(Continued)***

- Be sure the shift lever is in **P** (Park) and the parking brake is firmly applied when you leave your vehicle.
- Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal and **do not** race the engine when shifting out of **P** (Park) or **N** (Neutral).
- Do not shift into **D** (Drive) or **R** (Reverse) when the engine is racing.
- Do not shift into **P** (Park) while the vehicle is moving.

Read Section 3, "Starting and Operating Instructions", for more information.

# Important Safety Precautions

**Exhaust Warnings**

### ⚠ CAUTION

- Things that can burn can touch hot exhaust parts under your vehicle and ignite. Don't park over papers, leaves, dry grass or other things that can burn.
- Engine exhaust can kill. It contains carbon monoxide (CO) gas, which you can't see or smell. It can cause unconsciousness and death.

### ⚠ CAUTION *(Continued)*

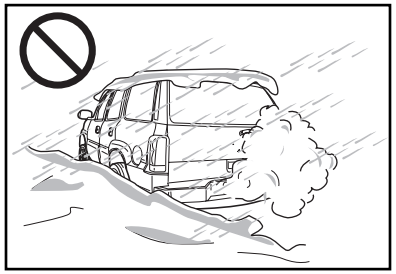
- Do not idle the engine in a closed-in place, such as the garage. Carbon monoxide (CO) gas could get into your vehicle.
- Idling the engine with the windows closed and the air conditioning fan off (if equipped), may allow dangerous exhaust fumes into your vehicle.

### ⚠ CAUTION *(Continued)*

- It can also be very dangerous to drive with the trunk, rear windows, hatch or rear doors open. If you must drive with one of these open or with their seal broken, make sure all other windows are closed and turn the fan on to the highest speed using any setting that brings in outside air. Doing this will force outside air into the vehicle.
- Make sure that no window, door, trunk or hatch at the rear of the vehicle is open if you are pulling a trailer.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 13 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM





**⚠ CAUTION (Continued)**

- Engine exhaust may also be entering your vehicle if:
  - your exhaust system sounds strange or different
  - your vehicle gets rusty underneath
  - your vehicle has been damaged or improperly serviced
  - the base of your vehicle, especially your exhaust pipe, is blocked by snow or debris

**⚠ CAUTION (Continued)**

If you suspect that exhaust is entering your vehicle, drive with all the windows open, turn the air conditioning (if equipped) on to any setting that circulates outside air and have the vehicle serviced immediately.

### Water and Your Vehicle

**⚠ CAUTION**

After a car wash or driving through a puddle, the brakes may not work well. Apply light pedal pressure until the brakes work normally.

Do not drive through deep puddles. If water enters into an air inlet, it might damage the engine. If you must drive through a puddle, drive carefully so as not to allow the water to splash against the underbody of the vehicle.

# Important Safety Precautions

**⚠ CAUTION *(Continued)***

Flowing or rushing water creates strong forces. If you try to drive through flowing water, as you might at a low water crossing, your vehicle can be carried away. As little as six inches of flowing water can carry away a smaller vehicle. If this happens, you and other vehicle occupants could drown. Don't ignore police warning signs, and otherwise be very cautious about trying to drive through flowing water.

### Driving on Hills

**⚠ CAUTION**

If you need to stop on a hill, do not hold the vehicle there with the accelerator pedal. This could damage the transmission. Apply the brakes to hold the vehicle in position.

When you are going down a steep hill, use a lower shift range, along with the brakes, to control the vehicle's speed.

Do not coast downhill in Neutral or with the ignition off. The brakes could overheat and you could have an accident.

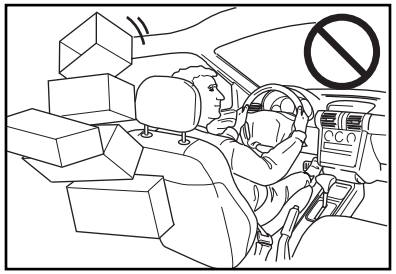
### Vehicle Loading

**⚠ CAUTION**

Do not load your vehicle in excess of the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating or either Gross Axle Weight Rating. If you do, parts on your vehicle could break and it could change the way your vehicle handles. Overloading could result in loss of vehicle control and personal injury. It can also shorten the service life of your vehicle.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 15 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM





**⚠ CAUTION (Continued)**

Things you put inside your vehicle can strike and injure people in a sudden stop or turn, or in a crash. Put things in the cargo area of your vehicle and try to spread the weight evenly. Never stack things inside the vehicle any higher than the seatbacks. Do not leave unsecured child restraints inside the vehicle. Try to secure anything that is carried inside the vehicle.

**Fuel and Other Flammable Materials**

**⚠ CAUTION**

Turn off the engine before refueling.

When you open the fuel filler cap, open it slightly at first to release the pressure inside the tank, then turn it all the way.

Never fill a portable fuel container while it is in your vehicle.

Dispense gasoline only into approved containers.

Do not smoke while pumping gasoline.

Do not carry combustible materials, such as gasoline, in the vehicle.

**⚠ CAUTION (Continued)**

Do not put paper or flammable items in an ashtray. They may catch fire from a cigarette.

To allow room for fuel expansion in the fuel tank (caused by heat from the engine), fill the tank only until the pump's automatic nozzle shuts off.

# Important Safety Precautions

### Batteries

**⚠ CAUTION**

Vehicle batteries can hurt you. They contain acid and electricity that can burn and gas that can explode or ignite. Use care and follow any applicable instructions when working near a battery.

Do not let battery fluid touch your skin. If you do get it in your eyes or on your skin, flush the place with water and get medical help immediately.

Do not use a match or flame near a vehicle's battery. If you need more light, use a flashlight.

**⚠ CAUTION *(Continued)***

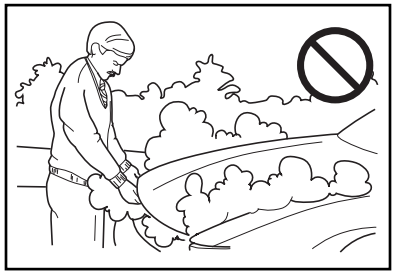
Every new GM vehicle uses an AC Delco® battery that requires no maintenance. However, if another battery has filler caps, be sure the right amount of fluid is there. If it is low, add water to make sure that there is no explosive gas present.

### Towing Your Vehicle

**⚠ CAUTION**

To help avoid injury to you or others:

- Do not let anyone ride in a vehicle that is being towed.
- Do not tow faster than safe or posted speeds.
- Be sure to secure any loose or damaged parts.
- Never get under a vehicle after it has been lifted.
- Always use separate safety chains on each side of the vehicle.



**Engine Compartment**

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Steam from an overheated engine can burn you badly. Stay away from the engine if you see or hear steam coming from it.

Be careful when working around the engine compartment. Some engine parts can get very hot and could burn you.

**⚠ *CAUTION (Continued)***

Exercise extreme caution around the electric engine fan. It sometimes starts by itself, even when the engine is not running.

**Cooling System**

**⚠ *CAUTION***

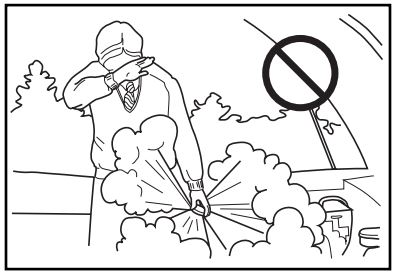
Do not run the engine if the coolant is leaking. If the vehicle loses all coolant, it could cause an engine fire and you could be burned.

Adding only plain water or a liquid other than the recommended coolant can be dangerous. The engine could overheat, but you would not get the overheat warning. The engine could catch on fire and you or others could be burned.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Under some conditions the ethylene glycol in engine coolant is combustible. To avoid being burned, **do not** spill coolant on the exhaust system or on hot engine parts. If you have any doubt, have this operation performed by a qualified technician.

# Important Safety Precautions



**⚠ CAUTION *(Continued)***

Steam and scalding liquids from a hot cooling system can blow out and burn you badly. Never turn the cap when the engine and cooling system are hot.

**Changing a Flat Tire**

**⚠ CAUTION**

Changing a tire can cause injury. The vehicle can slip off the jack and injure you or other people.

Getting under a vehicle when it is jacked up is dangerous. If the vehicle slips off the jack, you could be badly injured or killed. Never get under a vehicle when it is supported only by a jack.

**⚠ CAUTION *(Continued)***

Rust or dirt on the wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make the wheel nuts become loose after a time. The wheel could come off and cause an accident. When you change a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from the places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In an emergency, you could use a cloth or a paper towel to do this; but be sure to use a scraper or wire brush later, if necessary, to get all the rust or dirt off.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 19 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM

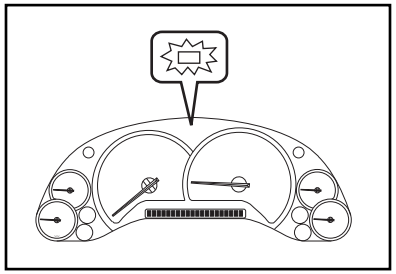


### System Problems

**⚠ CAUTION**

Driving with the brake warning light on can lead to an accident. Have the brakes checked immediately if the brake warning light stays on.

Do not keep driving with low oil pressure. Your engine could overheat and may catch on fire. You or others could be burned. Check the oil as soon as possible and have your vehicle serviced.



**⚠ CAUTION**

If any warning light on the instrument panel illuminates while you are driving, immediately park your vehicle in a safe place, and follow the instructions in this manual.

If the engine stalls while you are driving, the power-assisted brake and steering systems will not work properly, and braking and steering will require substantial effort. Try to pull over to a safe place before your vehicle stops.

**NOTICE**

Additional electronic equipment, such as a CB radio, cellular phone, navigation package or two-way radio, may interfere with the operation of your vehicle's engine, radio or other electronic systems and even damage them. Please consult with an authorized GM dealer before installing electronic equipment.

# Important Safety Precautions

### Additional Safety Cautions

**⚠ CAUTION**

Drinking and driving is very dangerous. Your reflexes, perceptions, attentiveness and judgment can be affected by even a small amount of alcohol. You can have a serious, or even fatal collision if you drive after drinking. Please don't drink and drive or ride with a driver who has been drinking. Ride home in a cab or designate a driver who will not drink.

**⚠ CAUTION *(Continued)***

Medical research shows that alcohol in a person's system can make crash injuries worse. This is especially true of injuries to the brain, spinal cord or heart. This means that when any person who has been drinking - whether a driver or a passenger - is in a crash, that person's chance of being killed or permanently disabled is higher than if the person had not been drinking.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Unlocked doors can be dangerous. Make sure to lock all doors while riding in the vehicle.

Turn the cruise control switch off when you are not using it.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 21 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



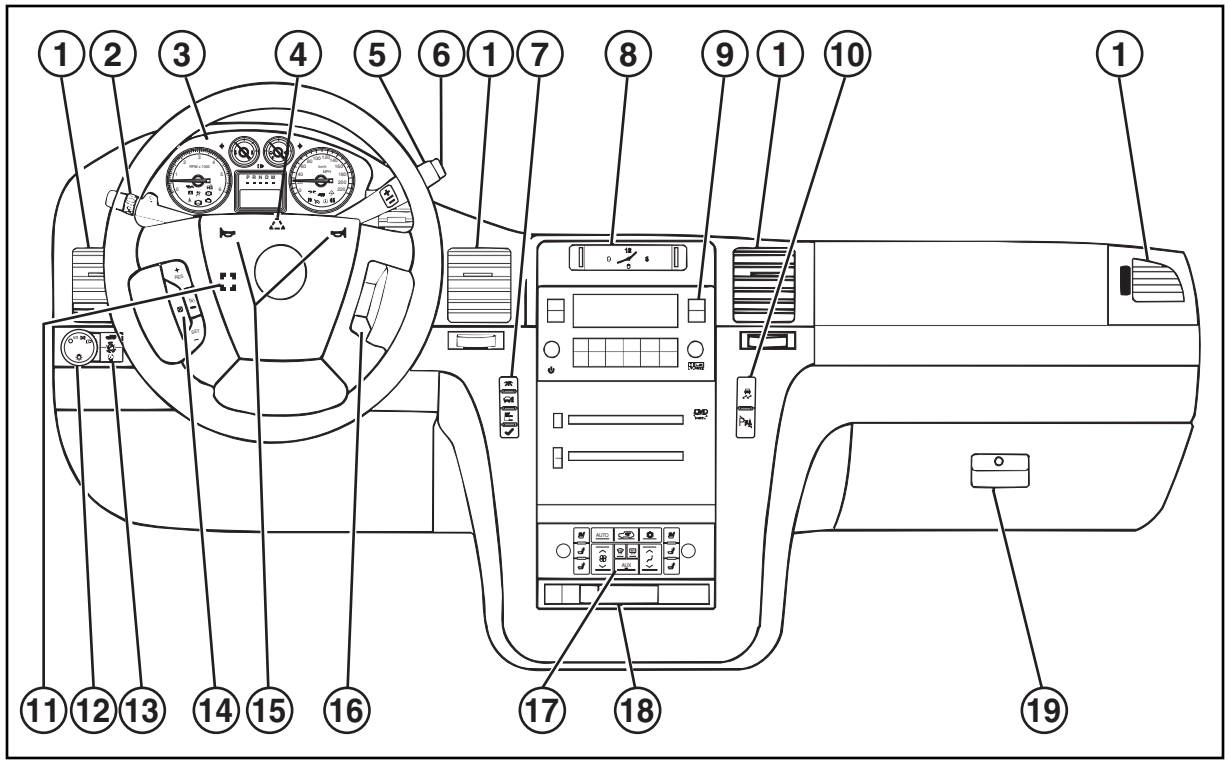
**Dash-Mounted Instruments and Controls** ..... 24
Instrument Cluster ..... 26
Warning Lights ..... 28
Driver Information Center ..... 39
Driver Information Center Buttons ..... 40
Trip/Fuel Information Menu ..... 42
Vehicle Information Menu ..... 45
Feature Customization ..... 49
Driver Information Center Messages ..... 65
Analog Clock ..... 78
**Stabilitrak® System** ..... 80
Stabilitrak Traction Control ..... 82
**Accessory Power Outlets** ..... 84
**Lights** ..... 86
Lights Main Switch ..... 86
Automatic Headlight System ..... 88
Instrument Light Dimmer ..... 89
Front Fog Lights ..... 89
Rear Fog Lights ..... 90
Dome Lights ..... 90
Illuminated Entry/Exit System ..... 91
Reading Lights ..... 91
Battery Saver ..... 91
**Instrument Panel Switchbank** ..... 91
**Heating and Air Conditioning System** ..... 92
Automatic Dual Zone Climate Control System ..... 92
Automatic Rear Air Conditioning/Heating ..... 100
Operating Tips ..... 102
Air Outlets ..... 103
Rear Window Defogger ..... 103
**Sound System and Clock** ..... 104
Rear Seat Audio ..... 106
Audio Steering Wheel Controls ..... 108
Anti-Theft Feature ..... 109
Antenna ..... 110
**Navigation System** ..... 110
**Controls Mounted on Steering Wheel/Column** ..... 111
Multifunction Lever ..... 111
Power Tilt Wheel Switch ..... 112
Heated Steering Wheel ..... 113
Cruise Control Buttons ..... 113
Horn ..... 113
Audio Steering Wheel Controls ..... 113
Ignition Switch ..... 113
Gearshift Lever ..... 114
Hazard Warning Flasher ..... 114

# Section **1 - Instrumentation and Controls**

**Multifunction Lever** ..... 115
Turn Signal ..... 115
High-Low Beam Control ..... 116
Windshield Wipers ..... 116
Rear Wiper/Washer ..... 120
**Cruise Control** ..... 121
**Mirrors** ..... 125
Outside Mirrors ..... 125
Automatic Inside Day/Night Mirror ..... 128
Vanity Mirrors ..... 128
**Windows** ..... 129
Power Windows ..... 130
**Doors** ..... 134
Manual Door Locks ..... 134
Power Door Locks ..... 135
Rear Door Security Lock ..... 137
Power Running Boards ..... 138
**Rear Cargo Area** ..... 138
Liftgate/Liftglass ..... 139
Power Liftgate ..... 141
Rear Area Storage ..... 145
Jack and Spare Tire Removal ..... 145
**Overhead Area and Roof** ..... 145
Sun Visors ..... 145
Sunroof ..... 146
Luggage Carrier ..... 149
**Storage** ..... 151
Center Console ..... 151
Rear Seat Armrest ..... 151
Glove Box ..... 151
Cupholders ..... 152
Heated and Cooled Cupholders ..... 152
Rear Area Storage ..... 153
Luggage Carrier ..... 153
**Ashtray and Lighter** ..... 153
**Retained Accessory Power** ..... 154
**Battery Rundown Protection** ..... 154
**Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist** ..... 155
Problems with the Parking Assist System ..... 158
**Electric Power Management** ..... 159
**Memory Feature** ..... 160

AKENG44_Escalade Page 23 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM





## ■ DASH-MOUNTED INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

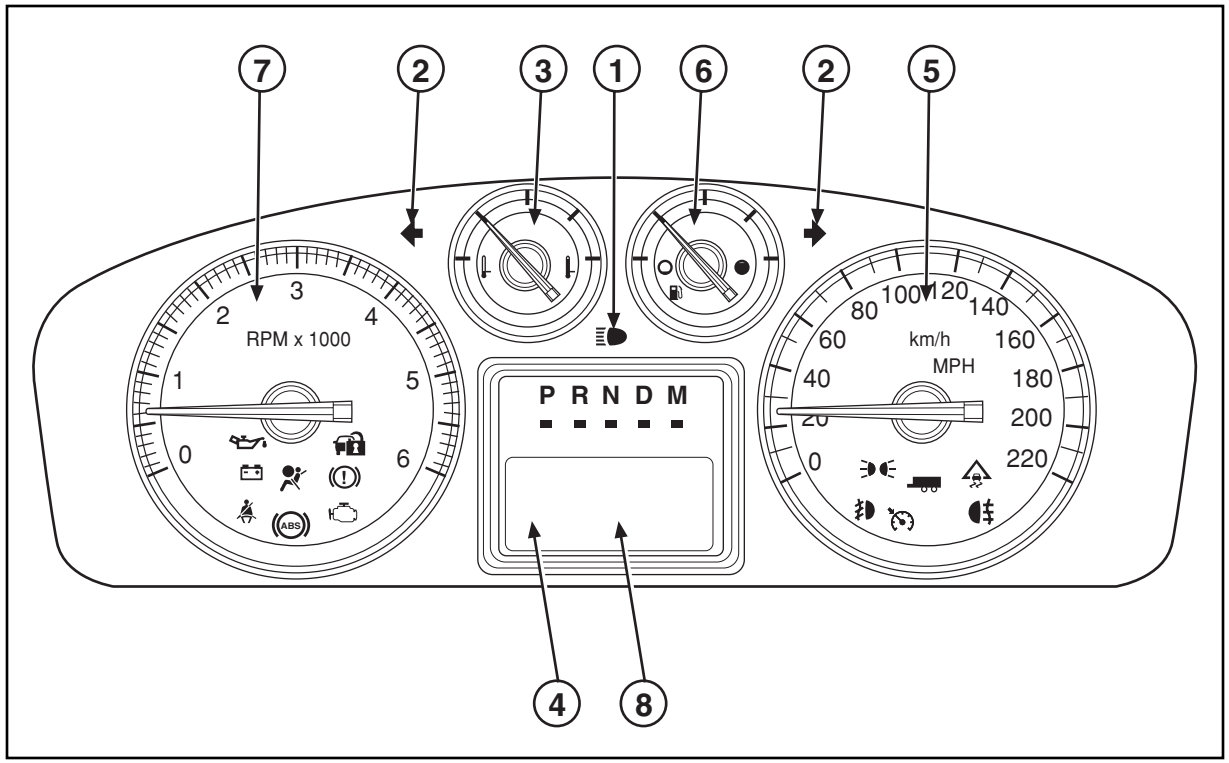
1. Air Vents
2. Multifunction Lever
3. Instrument Cluster
4. Hazard Warning Flasher Control
5. Gear Shift Lever
6. Tow/Haul Button
7. Driver Information Center Buttons
8. Analog Clock
9. Navigation/Sound System
10. Stabilitrak® Button; Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist Disable Switch
11. Power Tilt Wheel Switch
12. Main Light Controls
13. Dome Lights Override Button
14. Cruise Control Buttons
15. Horn
16. Audio Steering Wheel Controls
17. Automatic Dual Zone Climate Control System
18. Instrument Panel Switchbank

    This switchbank may contain the following controls:

    - Adjustable Accelerator and Brake Pedals Control
    - Heated Windshield Washer Button
    - Power Running Boards Control (If equipped)
19. Glove Box

AKENG44_Escalade Page 25 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM





# Instrumentation and Controls

## *INSTRUMENT CLUSTER*

The instrument cluster shown is typical. Your actual cluster may vary depending on the particular options included in your vehicle.

The instrument cluster is designed to let you know at a glance how your vehicle is running.

For information about the various warning lights located on your instrument cluster or elsewhere in your vehicle, see "Warning Lights" later in this section.

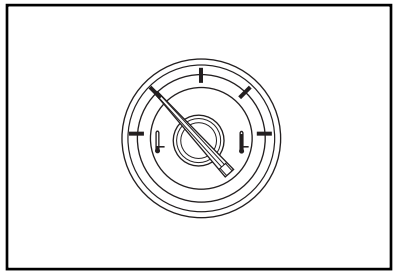
Your vehicle also has a Driver Information Center that works along with the warning lights and gages. See "Driver Information Center" later in this section.

1. **High Beam Indicator**

   The indicator light turns on when the headlights are set to high beams.

2. **Turn Signal Indicators**

   An arrow will flash in the direction of the turn or lane change when the turn signal is activated.



3. **Engine Coolant Temperature Gage**

   The engine coolant temperature gage shows the engine coolant temperature. If the pointer reaches the shaded warning area of the gage, the engine is too hot!

   If the engine coolant has overheated, turn the engine off immediately. See Sections 4 and 5 for more information on your vehicle's cooling system.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 27 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



**4. Odometer/Trip Odometer**

The odometer shows how far your vehicle has been driven.

The trip odometer can tell you how far your vehicle has been driven since you last set the trip odometer to zero.

To set the trip odometer to zero, display the trip odometer, then press the Driver Information Center set/reset button.

To display the odometer reading while the ignition is off, press the trip/fuel information button.

See the following under "Driver Information Center Buttons" later in this section:

- Trip/Fuel Information Button

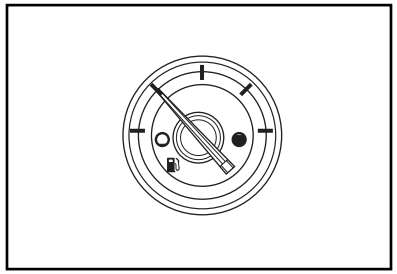
**5. Speedometer**

The speedometer displays the vehicle's speed.

The reading will be indicated in metric units of KM/H (kilometers per hour) or in US-English units of MPH (miles per hour).

You can use the Driver Information Center to change your display's readings between English and metric units.

See "Vehicle Information Menu" later in this section for more information.



**6. Fuel Gage**

The fuel gage shows how much fuel is in the fuel tank. The fuel gage works only when the ignition switch is on.

When the gage first indicates empty there is still a little fuel left, but you should refill the tank as soon as possible.

The arrow on the gage indicates the side of the vehicle where the fuel door is located.

7. **Tachometer**

   The tachometer displays the engine speed in thousands of revolutions per minute (RPM).

8. **Driver Information Center Display**

   See "Driver Information Center" later in this section for information.

## *Warning Lights*

Your vehicle has a number of warning lights.

The warning lights go on when there may be or there is a problem with one of your vehicle's functions. Some warning lights come on briefly when you turn the ignition key just to let you know they're working properly.

Your vehicle also has a Driver Information Center that works along with the warning lights and gages. See "Driver Information Center" later in this section.

**Engine Oil Pressure Warning Light**

This light should come on briefly as you start the engine, as a check to show you it is working properly.

If it doesn't come on, then have it fixed so it will be ready to warn you if there is a problem.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 29 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



If you have a problem with the oil, this light may stay on after you start the engine, or come on while you are driving. This indicates that oil is not going through the engine quickly enough to keep it lubricated. The engine could be low on oil, or could have some other oil problem. Have it fixed right away.

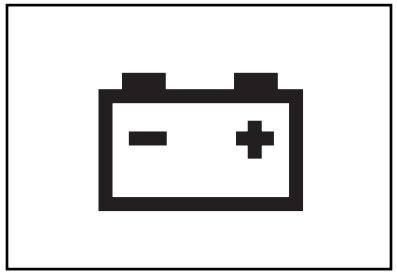
**⚠ CAUTION**

Do not keep driving with low oil pressure. Your engine could overheat and may catch on fire. You or others could be burned. Check the oil as soon as possible and have your vehicle serviced.

**NOTICE**

Engine damage due to neglected oil problems can be costly to repair and is not covered by your warranty.

See "Engine Oil" in Section 4 for more information.



**Charging System Light**

This light should come on when the ignition is on but the engine is not running, as a check to show you it is working properly.

If it doesn't come on, then have it fixed so it will be ready to warn you if there is a problem.

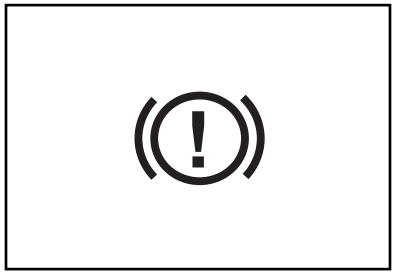
If it stays on or comes on while you are driving, there may be a problem with this system.

Have it checked right away.

Driving while this light is on could drain your battery.

If there is a problem with the battery charging system, a message will be displayed. See "Driver Information Center Messages" later in this section.

If you must drive a short distance with the light on, turn off all your accessories, such as the radio and air conditioner.



**Brake System Warning Light**

Your vehicle has "dual" brake systems. If one system fails, the other system can still stop your vehicle.

This light should come on briefly as you start your engine, as a check to show you it is working properly.

If it doesn't come on, then have it fixed so it will be ready to warn you if there is a problem.

This light appears when the fluid level in the reservoir is low or if there is another problem with the brakes.

A chime will sound to alert you when this warning light turns on.

See "Brake Master Cylinder Fluid" in Section 4.

If the light comes on and the chime sounds while you are driving, pull over and stop carefully.

The brake pedal may be harder to push or it may go closer to the floor. It may take longer to stop.

If the light stays on, have the vehicle towed for service. The brake system should be inspected right away.

This light also comes on when you set your parking brake while the ignition is on.

If you begin to drive while the parking brake is not yet released, the brake system warning light will come on and a chime will sound to alert you.

If it stays on after the parking brake is fully released, it means you may have a brake problem.

Have it checked right away.

If the light does not come on when the parking brake is set, have your vehicle serviced.

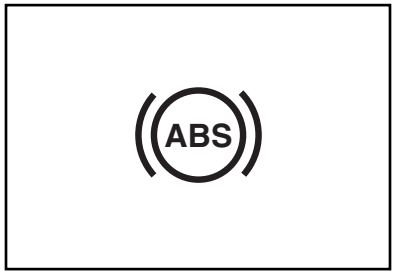
**⚠ CAUTION**

Driving with the brake warning light on can lead to an accident. Have the brakes checked immediately if the brake warning light stays on.

Have the vehicle towed for service.

If the Brake System Warning Light and the Antilock Brake System Warning Light both turn on and you hear a ten second chime, there may be a problem with the dynamic rear proportioning system.

See "Dynamic Rear Proportioning" under "Brakes" in Section 3 for more information.




**Antilock Brake System Warning Light**

This light should come on briefly as you start your engine, as a check to show you it is working properly.

If it doesn't come on, then have it fixed so it will be ready to warn you if there is a problem.

If it stays on or comes on while you are driving, there may be a problem with this system.

A text message may also appear in the Driver Information Center display.

See "Driver Information Center Messages" later in this section for more information.

Stop as soon as possible and turn the ignition off. Then start the engine to reset the system.

If the light still stays on, or if it comes on again while you're driving, your vehicle needs service. Until you get it fixed, the brakes will still work, but without the antilock feature.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

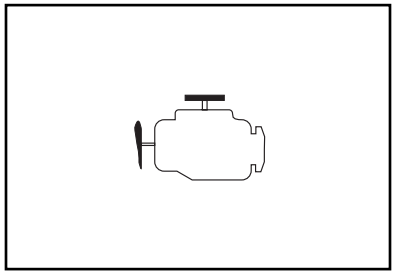
Driving with any brake warning light on can lead to an accident. Have the brakes checked immediately if any brake warning light stays on.

If the regular brake system warning light is also on, the vehicle does not have antilock brakes and there is a problem with the regular brakes. Pull off the road and stop carefully. Have the vehicle towed for service.

See "Brake System Warning Light" earlier in this section.

If the Brake System Warning Light and the Antilock Brake System Warning Light both turn on and you hear a ten second chime, there may be a problem with the dynamic rear proportioning system.

See "Dynamic Rear Proportioning" under "Brakes" in Section 3 for more information.



**Malfunction Indicator Light**

This light monitors the fuel, ignition and emission control systems.

This light should come on when the ignition is on but the engine is not running, as a check to show you it is working properly.

If it doesn't come on, then have it fixed so it will be ready to warn you if there is a problem.

If it stays on or comes on while you are driving, there may be a problem with this system.

Have it checked right away.

If the light stays on, you may be able to correct the malfunction by making sure the fuel cap is properly installed, if you have just refilled the tank with fuel.

**NOTICE**

If you keep driving your vehicle with this light on, after a while, your emission controls may not work as well, your fuel economy may not be as good and your engine may not run as smoothly. This could lead to costly repairs that may not be covered by your warranty.

**NOTICE *(Continued)***

Modifications made to the engine, transmission, exhaust, intake or fuel system of your vehicle or the replacement of the original tires with other than those of the same Tire Performance Criteria can affect your vehicle's emission controls and may cause this light to come on. Modifications to these systems could lead to costly repairs not covered by your warranty.

See "Accessories and Modifications" for more information.

In order for your vehicle to pass an inspection of its emission control equipment, the Malfunction Indicator Light must be working properly.

- If the engine is running, the light must be off.
- If the ignition is on and the engine is off, the light must be on.

If you have recently replaced the battery in your vehicle, or if the battery has run down, the vehicle's on-board diagnostic system may determine that the vehicle is not ready for inspection. It may take several days of routine driving in order for the diagnostic system to have enough data for the inspection.

If the vehicle has been driven for several days (with a fully charged battery) prior to the inspection, but the vehicle still does not pass for lack of on-board diagnostic system readiness, see your dealer or a qualified service center to prepare the vehicle for inspection.

**Stabilitrak® Indicator Light**

This light should come on briefly as you start the engine, as a check to show you it is working properly.

If it doesn't come on, then have it fixed so it will be ready to warn you if there is a problem.

When the Stabilitrak system activates, the Stabilitrak Indicator Light will flash.

After the initial bulb check, this light comes on to indicate that the system is off.

If the light stays on, or if it comes on while you're driving when you have not turned off Stabilitrak, there may be a problem with this system.

See your dealer for service.

When this warning light is on, the traction control system will not limit wheel spin.

Adjust your driving accordingly.

See "Stabilitrak System" later in this section for more information.

**Safety Belt Reminder Light**

See "Safety Belts" in Section 2 for information.

**Passenger Safety Belt Reminder Light**

The passenger safety belt reminder light is located on the overhead console.

See "Safety Belts" in Section 2 for information.

**Air Bag Light**

This light will go on when you start the engine and may flash for a few seconds.

If it doesn't come on, then have it fixed so it will be ready to warn you if there is a problem.

If it stays on or comes on while you are driving, there may be a problem with this system.

A text message may also appear in the Driver Information Center display.

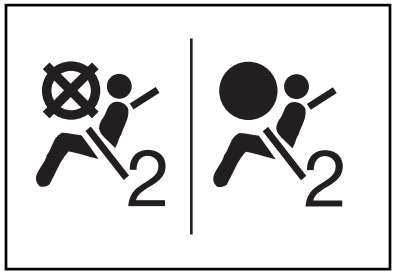
See "Driver Information Center Messages" later in this section for more information.

Have the vehicle serviced right away.

See Section 2 for more information on the air bag light.

**⚠ CAUTION**

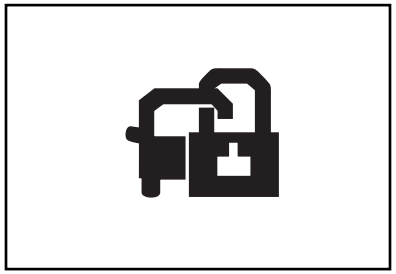
If the air bag light stays on or comes on while you are driving, there may be a problem with this system. The air bags may not inflate in a crash, or they may inflate even when there hasn't been a crash. To avoid injury to yourself or others, have the vehicle serviced right away.



**Passenger Air Bag On/Off Indicator**

The indicator light is located in the overhead console.

See "Passenger Sensing System" in Section 2.



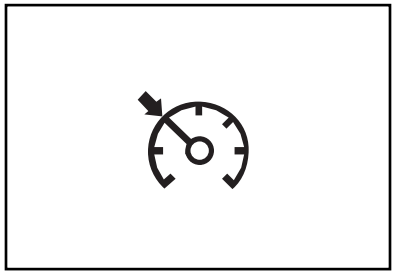
**Security System Light**

This light should come on briefly as you start the engine, as a check to show you it is working properly.

If it doesn't come on, then have it fixed so it will be ready to warn you if there is a problem.

See "PASS-Key® III Plus Electronic Immobilizer System" in Section 3 for information on the PASS-Key® system.

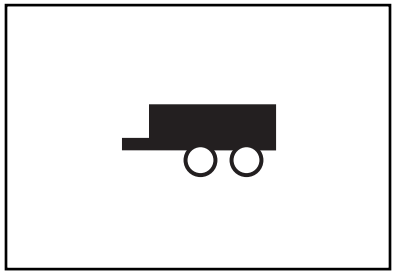
Also, see "Theft Deterrent System" in Section 3 for more information on this light.



**Cruise Control Light**

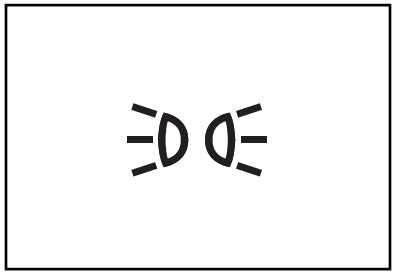
This light turns on whenever you set the cruise control.

See "Cruise Control" later in this section for more information.



**Tow/Haul Mode Light**

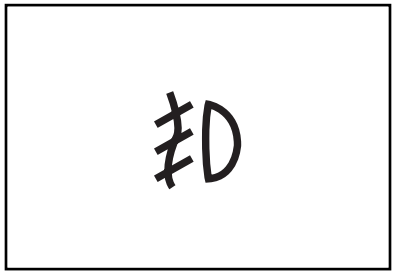
This light should come on when the tow/haul mode has been selected. See "Tow/Haul Mode" under "Trailer Towing" in Section 3.



**Lights On Reminder Light**

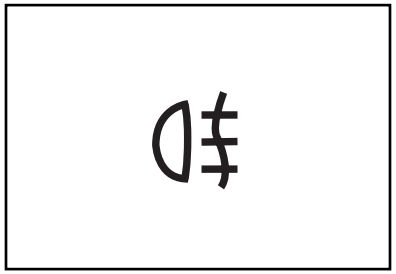
This light turns on as a reminder whenever the parking lights are on.

See "Lights" later in this section for more information.



**Fog Lamp Light**

This light will come on when the fog lights are turned on. See "Fog Lights" later in this section for more information.

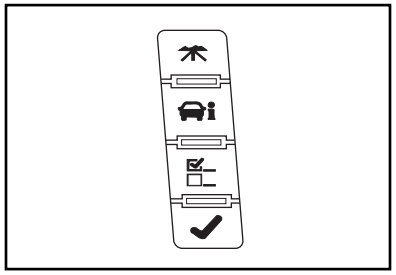


**Rear Fog Lamp Light**

This light will come on when the rear fog lights are turned on. See "Rear Fog Lights" later in this section for more information.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 39 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM





## *DRIVER INFORMATION CENTER*

The Driver Information Center gives you the status of many of your vehicle's systems.

The display is located at the bottom of the instrument cluster.

The control buttons are located on the instrument panel, to the right of the steering wheel.

See "Driver Information Center Buttons" later in this section for more information.

The Driver Information Center can be used to program various customization features that may be available with your vehicle.

See "Feature Customization" later in this section.

When the ignition is turned on, the Driver Information Center will turn on.

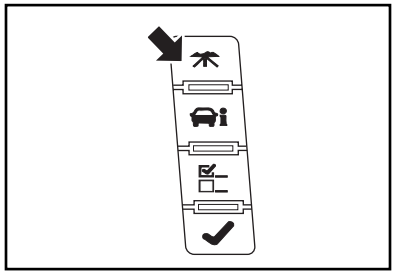
After a short delay, the Driver Information Center will recall the mode last displayed before the engine was turned off.

If the system senses a problem, a message will appear on the display.

See "Driver Information Center Messages" later in this section for more information.

If your vehicle is equipped with these features, the compass and outside temperature will appear on the display whenever the ignition is on and the trip/fuel information menu is active.

# Instrumentation and Controls



## *Driver Information Center Buttons*

The control buttons are located on the instrument panel, to the right of the steering wheel.

**(TRIP/FUEL INFORMATION BUTTON)**

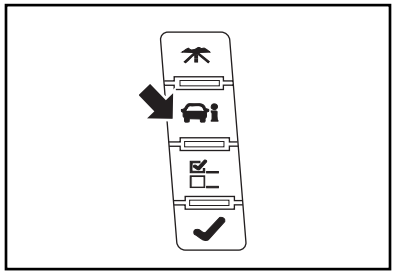
Pressing this button repeatedly will allow you to scroll through the following displays:

- Odometer
- Trip Odometer
- Fuel Range
- Average Fuel Economy
- Fuel Used
- Timer
- Transmission Fluid Temperature
- Average Speed

A blank page ends this menu.

See the following, later in this section, for more information:

- Trip/Fuel Information Menu



**(VEHICLE INFORMATION BUTTON)**

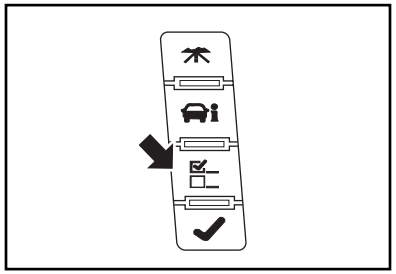
Pressing this button repeatedly will allow you to scroll through the following displays:

- Engine Oil Life
- English/Metric Unit Selection
- Battery Voltage
- Oil Pressure
- Remote Keyless Entry Transmitter Matching

- Compass Variance Zone Settings (If equipped)
- Compass Calibration (If equipped)

A blank page ends this menu.

See "Vehicle Information Menu" later in this section for more information.

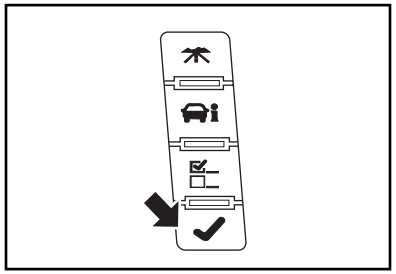


**(PERSONALIZATION BUTTON)**

Press the button repeatedly to scroll through the list of customizable features available on your vehicle.

Only available options will appear in the display.

To program personalization settings, see "Feature Customization" later in this section.



**✓ (SET/RESET BUTTON)**

Press this button to reset Driver Information Center features and to turn off or acknowledge messages.

Use this button to do the following:

- to reset the trip odometer
- to start, stop or reset the timer
- to reset the fuel used reading
- to reset the average fuel economy reading

See the following, later in this section, for more information:

- Trip/Fuel Information Menu

- to access the settings for the displayed customization feature

  See "Feature Customization" later in this section.

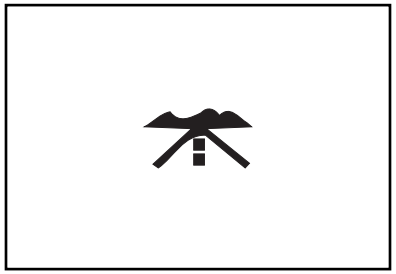
- to change the compass variance zone

  See the following, later in this section, for more information:

  - Vehicle Information Menu

- to clear messages from the Driver Information Center display

  See "Driver Information Center Messages" later in this section.



### *Trip/Fuel Information Menu*

Press this button to access the trip/fuel information menu.

A blank page ends this menu.

Pressing this button repeatedly will allow you to scroll through the following displays:

- **ODOMETER**

  The odometer shows how far your vehicle has been driven.

  The reading will be indicated in metric units of KM (kilometers) or in US-English units of MI (miles).

  See "Vehicle Information Menu" later in this section for more information.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 43 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



- **TRIP**

  The trip odometer can tell you how far your vehicle has been driven since you last set the trip odometer to zero.

  The reading will be indicated in metric units of KM (kilometers) or in US-English units of MI (miles).

  To reset this reading to zero, first select its display, then press the ✓ button.

- **FUEL RANGE**

  This display shows how far the computer thinks you can travel with the fuel that's in the tank.

  The fuel range is calculated using the average fuel economy of recent driving conditions.

  The reading will be indicated in metric units of KM (kilometers) or in US-English units of MI (miles).

  If the range display shows **LOW**, you should get fuel right away.

  This item cannot be reset.

- **AVERAGE ECONOMY**

  This display shows the average fuel economy since the last time you reset the system.

  The reading will be indicated in metric units of L/100 KM (the amount of fuel consumed in liters per 100 km) or in US-English units of MPG (Miles Per Gallon).

  To reset this reading to zero, first select its display, then press and hold the ✓ button.

- **FUEL USED**

  This display shows how much fuel has been used since you last reset the system.

  The reading will be indicated in metric units of liters or in US-English units of gallons.

  To reset this reading to zero, first select its display, then press and hold the ✓ button.

- **TIMER**

  The timer feature acts as a stopwatch.

  To start the timer, first select its display, then press the ✓ button.

  If, during a trip, you are stopping and starting your vehicle, the timer will automatically start timing where it left off the last time you turned the ignition off.

  The fields are for the hours, minutes, and seconds.

  The timer will roll back to **00:00:00** after **99:59:59**.

  To stop the timer without resetting it, first select its display, then press the ✓ button briefly.

  To reset the timer to **00:00:00**, press and hold the ✓ button.

- **TRANS TEMP** (transmission temperature)

  This display shows the transmission fluid temperature.

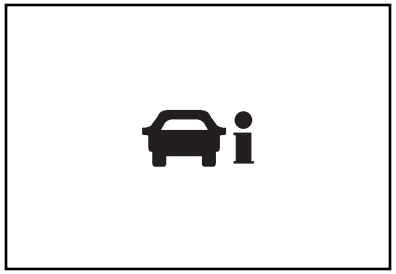
  The reading will be indicated in metric units of °C or in US-English units of °F.

- **AVERAGE SPEED**

  This display shows your average speed since you last reset the system.

  The reading will be indicated in metric units of KM/H (kilometers per hour) or in US-English units of MPH (miles per hour).

  To reset this reading to zero, first select its display, then press and hold the ✓ button.



### *Vehicle Information Menu*

Press this button to access the vehicle information menu.

A blank page ends this menu.

Pressing this button repeatedly will allow you to scroll through the following displays:

- **OIL LIFE REMAINING**

  This display shows the percentage of oil life remaining since the system was last reset.

  If, for example, you see **95%**, that means that the way you are driving your vehicle, 95% of the current oil life remains.

  How frequently you have to change the oil depends on your driving patterns, engine rpm and engine temperature.

  It is the owner's responsibility to check the engine oil level regularly.

  See "Engine Oil" in Section 4 for more information.

  When the remaining oil life is low, the **CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON** message will appear.

  After the oil change message comes on, change the engine oil as soon as possible within the next 1000 km (600 miles).

Be sure to replace the engine oil filter each time you change engine oil.

Even if the oil life system does not indicate that an oil change is necessary, the engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year.

After you change the oil, the oil life monitor will need to be reset. See your dealer for service.

See "Engine Oil" in Section 4 for more information.

Also see the Maintenance Schedule booklet for more information.

- **UNITS**

  You can scroll through and activate one of the following feature settings:

  - **ENGLISH** (English Units)

    This setting lets you view your displays in U.S. English units.

  - **METRIC** (Metric Units)

    This setting lets you view your displays in metric units.

  When the desired feature setting is displayed, press the ✓ button to select it.

- **BATTERY VOLTAGE**

  This display lets you monitor battery voltage to make sure it is charging properly.

  You may see the reading fluctuate. This is normal.

  If the current voltage is outside the normal operating range, **LOW** or **HIGH** will appear on the display next to the numeric voltage reading.

  If there is a problem with the battery charging system, a message will be displayed. See "Driver Information Center Messages" later in this section.

  The Charging System Light may also appear on the instrument cluster.

  See "Charging System Light" under "Warning Lights" earlier in this section for more information.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 47 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



- **OIL PRESSURE**

  This display shows the engine oil pressure.

  The reading will be indicated in metric units of kPa or in US-English units of PSI.

- **PRESS ✓ TO RELEARN REMOTE KEY**

  See your dealer to purchase a new transmitter and to have transmitters matched to your vehicle.

**PRESS ✓ TO CHANGE COMPASS ZONE**

Note: This feature may not be available on all vehicles.

Your vehicle's compass should be pre-set to your zone.

If your vehicle is taken outside this zone, it may be necessary to adjust the compass to compensate for variance.

Compass variance is the difference between the earth's magnetic north and the true geographic north.

To adjust for compass variance:

- See your dealer to find out what zone you are in.
- Place the transmission in **P** (Park).
- Press repeatedly to select this display.
- Press ✓ repeatedly to select the correct compass zone.
- Press the trip/fuel button until a compass direction appears on the display.
- Calibrate the compass, if necessary.

- **PRESS ✓ TO CALIBRATE COMPASS**

  Note: This feature may not be available on all vehicles.

  If an incorrect reading is displayed, first check that the compass is set to the correct variance zone. If it is, the compass may need calibration.

  There may be a strong magnetic field (from various magnetic objects on the vehicle) interfering with the compass.

  Remove these objects or ask your dealer for assistance.

  Do not use other features such as the power windows, sunroof or the climate controls during the calibration procedure.

  - Drive your car to an open parking lot where you can safely drive in a full circle.
  - Press repeatedly to select the compass calibration display.
  - Press the ✓ button.

    **CALIBRATING: DRIVE IN CIRCLES** will appear on the display.
  - Slowly and safely drive your vehicle in a full circle until **CALIBRATION COMPLETE** appears on the display.

    Vehicle speed must be less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

    If **CAL** appears on the display, then the compass did not calibrate. Repeat the procedure to calibrate the compass.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 49 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



### *Feature Customization*

The Driver Information Center can be used to program various customization features that may be available with your vehicle.

Only available options will appear in the display.

Your vehicle may be equipped with the following features that can be individually personalized.

One preferred setting per available customization feature can be stored.

- **DISPLAY IN ENGLISH**
- **DISPLAY LANGUAGE**
- **AUTO DOOR LOCK** (automatic door lock)
- **AUTO DOOR UNLOCK** (automatic door unlock)
- **REMOTE DOOR LOCK**
- **REMOTE DOOR UNLOCK**
- **DELAY DOOR LOCK**
- **EXIT LIGHTING**
- **APPROACH LIGHTING**
- **CHIME VOLUME**
- **PARK TILT MIRRORS**
- **EASY EXIT RECALL**
- **EASY EXIT SETUP**
- **MEMORY SEAT RECALL**
- **DISPLAY DIGITAL SPEED**
- **FACTORY SETTINGS**
- **EXIT FEATURE SETTINGS**

**ENTERING PROGRAMMING MODE**

1. Turn the ignition on.
2. Place the transmission in **P** (Park).
3. Turn off the headlights to avoid draining the battery.
4. Press ⊟ to scroll through the list of programmable features available on your vehicle.

To exit programming mode, see "Exiting Programming Mode" later in this section.

**FEATURE CUSTOMIZATION MENU**

To enter this menu, see "Entering Programming Mode" earlier in this section.

Once you have entered programming mode, press the ⊟ button repeatedly to scroll through the list of customizable features available on your vehicle.

Only available options will appear in the display.

The following features, which are automatically recalled, can only be programmed to one vehicle setting:

- **PRESS ✓ TO DISPLAY IN ENGLISH**

  Note:

  This menu item will not appear if the Driver Information Center display is already set to the English language.

  With this item displayed, press the ✓ button to select English as the Driver Information Center display language.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 51 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



- **DISPLAY LANGUAGE**

  Use this menu to select the language that you would like your vehicle to use for information displays.

  - Note:

    Languages listed in this manual may not be available in all areas and/or for all vehicle displays.

    See your dealer for more information.

  Press the ✓ button to enter the submenu.

While in this submenu, press the ⊟ button repeatedly to scroll through the language options.

- **ENGLISH** (English Language)

  All information is displayed in the English language.

- **FRANÇAIS** (French Language)

  All information is displayed in the French language.

- **ESPAÑOL** (Spanish Language)

  All information is displayed in the Spanish language.

- **DEUTSCH** (German Language)

  All information is displayed in the German language.

- **ITALIANO** (Italian Language)

  All information is displayed in the Italian language.

- **CHINESE** (Chinese Language)

  All information is displayed in the Chinese language.

- **NO CHANGE**

Once the desired setting is displayed, press the ✓ button to select it.

You may now either exit programming mode or program the next available feature.

To exit programming mode, see "Exiting Programming Mode" later in this section.

See your dealer if you would like to have the Driver Information Center display languages changed in your vehicle.

- **AUTO DOOR LOCK**
  (automatic door lock)

  This feature allows you to customize your automatic door locks to suit your needs.

  Press the ✓ button to enter the submenu.

While in this submenu, press the ⊟ button repeatedly to scroll through the following options:

- **SHIFT OUT OF PARK**

  All doors automatically lock when you shift out of **P** (Park).

  This is the default setting.

- **AT VEHICLE SPEED**

  The doors automatically lock when the vehicle's speed exceeds 13 km/h (8 mph) for three seconds.

- **NO CHANGE**

Once the desired setting is displayed, press the ✓ button to select it.

You may now either exit programming mode or program the next available feature.

To exit programming mode, see "Exiting Programming Mode" later in this section.

See "Doors" later in this section for more information.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 53 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



- **AUTO DOOR UNLOCK** (automatic door unlock)

  This item allows you to customize your vehicle's automatic door unlock feature.

  Press the ✓ button to enter the submenu.

  While in this submenu, press the ⚿ button repeatedly to scroll through the following options:

  - **OFF**

    With this setting activated, the doors will not automatically unlock.

  - **DRIVER AT KEY OUT**

    The driver's door automatically unlocks when the key is removed from the ignition.

  - **DRIVER IN PARK**

    The driver's door automatically unlocks when you shift into **P** (Park).

  - **ALL AT KEY OUT**

    All doors automatically unlock when the key is removed from the ignition.

  - **ALL IN PARK**

    All doors automatically unlock when you shift into **P** (Park).

    This is the default setting.

  - **NO CHANGE**

    Once the desired setting is displayed, press the ✓ button to select it.

    You may now either exit programming mode or program the next available feature.

    To exit programming mode, see "Exiting Programming Mode" later in this section.

    See "Doors" later in this section for more information.

- **REMOTE DOOR LOCK**)

  This feature allows you to select the type of feedback you will receive when locking the vehicle using the remote keyless entry transmitter.

  Note: You will only receive feedback if the doors are closed.

  Press the ✓ button to enter the submenu.

  While in this submenu, press the button repeatedly to scroll through the following options:

  - **OFF**

    There is no horn or lights feedback when the remote keyless entry lock button is pressed.

  - **LIGHTS ONLY**

    With this setting activated, the exterior lights will flash when the lock button on the transmitter is pressed.

  - **HORN ONLY**

    With this setting activated, the horn will sound when the lock button on the transmitter is pressed twice.

  - **HORN & LIGHTS**

    With this setting activated, the exterior lights will flash when the lock button on the transmitter is pressed.

    The horn will sound if you press the lock button again within five seconds.

    This is the default setting.

  - **NO CHANGE**

    Once the desired setting is displayed, press the ✓ button to select it.

    You may now either exit programming mode or program the next available feature.

    To exit programming mode, see "Exiting Programming Mode" later in this section.

    See "Remote Keyless Entry" in Section 3 for more information.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 55 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



- **REMOTE DOOR UNLOCK**

  This feature allows you to select the type of feedback you will receive when unlocking the vehicle using the remote keyless entry transmitter.

  Note: You will only receive feedback if the doors are closed.

  Press the ✓ button to enter the submenu.

While in this submenu, press the button repeatedly to scroll through the following options:

- **LIGHTS OFF**

  With this setting activated, the exterior lights will not flash when the unlock button on the transmitter is pressed.

- **LIGHTS ON**

  With this setting activated, the exterior lights will flash when the unlock button on the transmitter is pressed.

  This is the default setting.

- **NO CHANGE**

Once the desired setting is displayed, press the ✓ button to select it.

You may now either exit programming mode or program the next available feature.

To exit programming mode, see "Exiting Programming Mode" later in this section.

See "Remote Keyless Entry" in Section 3 for more information.

- **DELAY DOOR LOCK** (delay door lock)

  This feature allows you to delay vehicle locking for five seconds in the event that the vehicle receives a door lock command while the liftgate or a door is open.

  Press the ✓ button to enter the submenu.

While in this submenu, press the button repeatedly to scroll through the following options:

- **OFF**

  The doors will lock immediately when the power door lock switch is pressed.

- **ON**

  If the power door lock switch is pressed while the liftgate or a door is open, locking will be delayed for five seconds after the last door is closed.

  This is the default setting.

- **NO CHANGE**

Once the desired setting is displayed, press the ✓ button to select it.

You may now either exit programming mode or program the next available feature.

To exit programming mode, see "Exiting Programming Mode" later in this section.

See "Delayed Locking" under "Doors" for information on how this feature works.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 57 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



- **EXIT LIGHTING**

  This feature allows you to designate the length of time that the exterior lights stay on (when it is dark outside) after the ignition is turned off.

  Press the ✓ button to enter the submenu.

While in this submenu, press the ⊟ button repeatedly to scroll through the following options:

- **OFF**

  The exterior lights will not stay on.

- **30 SECONDS**

  This is the default setting.

- **1 MINUTE**
- **2 MINUTES**
- **NO CHANGE**

Once the desired setting is displayed, press the ✓ button to select it.

You may now either exit programming mode or program the next available feature.

To exit programming mode, see "Exiting Programming Mode" later in this section.

- **APPROACH LIGHTING**

  This feature allows you to program the exterior lights to turn on or remain off when you use the Remote Keyless Entry transmitter to unlock your vehicle while it is dark outside.

  Press the ✓ button to enter the submenu.

  While in this submenu, press the ⚿ button repeatedly to scroll through the following options:

  - **OFF**

    The perimeter lights will not turn on when you unlock the vehicle using the remote keyless entry transmitter.

  - **ON**

    When the vehicle is unlocked using the Remote Keyless Entry transmitter, the exterior lights will also turn on. They will stay on for 20 seconds or until the ignition is turned on or the lock button on the transmitter is pressed.

    This is the default setting.

  - **NO CHANGE**

  Once the desired setting is displayed, press the ✓ button to select it.

  You may now either exit programming mode or program the next available feature.

  To exit programming mode, see "Exiting Programming Mode" later in this section.

  See "Remote Keyless Entry" in Section 3 for more information.

- **CHIME VOLUME**

  This feature allows you to change the chime volume level. The chime cannot be turned off completely.

  The system has two chime volume levels, normal and loud.

  Press the ✓ button to enter the submenu.

  While in this submenu, press the ⚿ button repeatedly to scroll through the following options:

  - **NORMAL**
  - **LOUD**
  - **NO CHANGE**

AKENG44_Escalade Page 59 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



Once the desired setting is displayed, press the ✓ button to select it.

You may now either exit programming mode or program the next available feature.

To exit programming mode, see "Exiting Programming Mode" later in this section.

- **PARK TILT MIRRORS**

  With this feature turned on, the passenger's and/or driver's mirror will tilt down to a pre-programmed position, whenever the vehicle is shifted into **R** (Reverse) to allow you to view the curb while you parallel park.

  Press the ✓ button to enter the submenu.

  While in this submenu, press the button repeatedly to scroll through the following options:

  - **OFF**

    The outside mirrors do not tilt down when the vehicle is shifted into **R** (Reverse).

    This is the default setting.

  - **DRIVER MIRROR**

    The outside mirror on the driver's side of the vehicle will tilt down to a curb-view position when the vehicle is shifted into **R** (Reverse).

  - **PASSENGER MIRROR**

    The outside mirror on the passenger's side of the vehicle will tilt down to a curb-view position when the vehicle is shifted into **R** (Reverse).

  - **BOTH MIRRORS**

    Both outside mirrors will tilt down to a curb-view position when the vehicle is shifted into **R** (Reverse).

  - **NO CHANGE**

Once the desired setting is displayed, press the ✓ button to select it.

You may now either exit programming mode or program the next available feature.

To exit programming mode, see "Exiting Programming Mode" later in this section.

See the following, later in this section, for more information:

- Mirrors

  Curb View Assist Mirrors

- **EASY EXIT RECALL**

  This feature allows you to enable or disable automatic recall of the Memory Feature's easy exit position.

  Press the ✓ button to enter the submenu.

  While in this submenu, press the button repeatedly to scroll through the following options:

  - **DOOR BUTTON ONLY**

    With this setting activated, the Memory Feature's easy exit position will not be automatically recalled.

    The exit settings will only be recalled when the exit button is pressed.

  - **BUTTON AND KEY OUT**

    With this setting activated, the Memory Feature's easy exit position will be automatically recalled when the key is removed from the ignition.

    The power tilt steering column will also move upward.

    If the key is inserted into the ignition and removed again without activating the Memory Feature, the seat and steering column will remain in the original exit position.

    This is the default setting.

  - **NO CHANGE**

Once the desired setting is displayed, press the ✓ button to select it.

You may now either exit programming mode or program the next available feature.

To exit programming mode, see "Exiting Programming Mode" later in this section.

For information on programming your preferred settings into memory, see "Memory Feature", later in this section.

- **EASY EXIT SETUP**

  This feature allows you to select which settings the Memory Feature's easy exit position will recall.

  Press the ✓ button to enter the submenu.

  While in this submenu, press the button repeatedly to scroll through the following options:

  - **OFF**

    With this setting activated, the Memory Feature's easy exit position will not be automatically recalled.

  - **SEAT ONLY**

    With this setting activated, the Memory Feature's easy exit position for the driver's seat will be automatically recalled.

  - **TILT ONLY**

    With this setting activated, the Memory Feature's easy exit position for the tilt steering wheel will be automatically recalled.

  - **ALL**

    With this setting activated, the Memory Feature's easy exit position for the driver's seat and the tilt steering wheel will be automatically recalled.

    This is the default setting.

  - **NO CHANGE**

Once the desired setting is displayed, press the ✓ button to select it.

You may now either exit programming mode or program the next available feature.

To exit programming mode, see "Exiting Programming Mode" later in this section.

For information on programming your preferred settings into memory, see "Memory Feature", later in this section.

- **MEMORY SEAT RECALL**

  This feature allows you to enable or disable automatic recall of Memory Feature settings.

  Press the ✓ button to enter the submenu.

  While in this submenu, press the button repeatedly to scroll through the following options:

  **- OFF**

  With this setting activated, the Memory Feature settings will not be automatically recalled.

  This is the default setting.

  **- ON**

  With this setting activated, the Memory Feature settings will be automatically recalled when you unlock the vehicle using the remote keyless entry transmitter.

  **- NO CHANGE**

  Once the desired setting is displayed, press the ✓ button to select it.

  You may now either exit programming mode or program the next available feature.

  To exit programming mode, see "Exiting Programming Mode" later in this section.

  For information on programming your preferred settings into memory, see "Memory Feature", later in this section.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 63 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



- **DISPLAY DIGITAL SPEED**

  This feature allows you to enable or disable the digital speed display in the Driver Information Center.

  Press the ✓ button to enter the submenu.

While in this submenu, press the ⊟ button repeatedly to scroll through the following options:

- **OFF**

  Select this option to disable this feature.

- **ON**

  Select this option to enable this feature.

  This is the default setting.

- **NO CHANGE**

Once the desired setting is displayed, press the ✓ button to select it.

You may now either exit programming mode or program the next available feature.

To exit programming mode, see "Exiting Programming Mode" later in this section.

- **FACTORY SETTINGS**

  This feature allows you to reset all of the system's programmable features to their default settings.

  Press the ✓ button to enter the submenu.

  While in this submenu, press the button repeatedly to scroll through the following options:

  - **RESTORE ALL**

    If you select this option, all of the system's programmable features will be reset to their default settings.

    This is the default setting.

  - **DO NOT RESTORE**

    If you select this option, the current settings will not change.

  Once the desired setting is displayed, press the ✓ button to select it.

  You may now either exit programming mode or program the next available feature.

  To exit programming mode, see "Exiting Programming Mode" later in this section.

- **PRESS ✓ TO EXIT FEATURE SETTINGS**
- This menu item allows you to exit the customization menu.

  Press the ✓ button to exit the menu.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 65 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



**EXITING PROGRAMMING MODE**

To exit programming mode, do any of the following:

- Turn off the ignition.
- Press the driver information center trip/fuel information button or vehicle information button.
- Press the customization button repeatedly until the following message appears on the display:
  - **PRESS ✓ TO EXIT FEATURE SETTINGS**
  - Press the ✓ button to exit the menu.
- Do not press any buttons.

  The display will time out after 40 seconds of inactivity.

## *Driver Information Center Messages*

These messages will appear if a problem is sensed in one of your vehicle's systems or to display system information.

If there is more than one message, the messages will appear one behind the other.

Clear any warning messages on the Driver Information Center by pressing any of the four Driver Information Center buttons located on the instrument panel, to the right of the steering wheel.

Clearing a message only makes the message disappear. It does not eliminate the problem. Be sure to take messages seriously.

Some messages may not be cleared until the problem is fixed.

- **CALIBRATING: DRIVE IN CIRCLES**

  Appears when the compass is being calibrated.

  To calibrate the compass, drive your vehicle in a 360° circle at a speed of 8 km/h or less.

  See the following, earlier in this section, for more information:

  - Vehicle Information Menu

  **PRESS ✓ TO CALIBRATE COMPASS**

- **CALIBRATION COMPLETE**

  Appears when the compass has been calibrated successfully.

  See the following, earlier in this section, for more information:

  - Vehicle Information Menu

    **PRESS ✓ TO CALIBRATE COMPASS**

- **CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON**

  When the remaining oil life is low, the **CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON** message will appear.

  See "Engine Oil" in Section 4 for more information.

  Also see the Maintenance Schedule booklet for more information.

  After you change the oil, the oil life monitor will need to be reset. See your dealer for service.

- **DRIVER DOOR OPEN**

  Appears with a chime when the driver's door is open or ajar and the vehicle is shifted out of **P** (Park).

  Make sure that there are no obstructions in the way of the door and close the door.

- **ENGINE HOT -- A/C TURNED OFF**

  Appears when the coolant temperature gets hot.

  To avoid added strain on a hot engine, the air conditioning compressor is automatically turned off.

  When the coolant temperature returns to normal, air conditioning compressor operation will resume.

  You may continue to drive the vehicle.

  If this message continues to appear, have the system repaired as soon as possible to avoid engine damage.

- **ENGINE OIL HOT -- IDLE ENGINE**

  Appears when the engine oil temperature gets hot.

  Pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

  Let the engine idle until it is cool.

- **ENGINE OVERHEATED -- IDLE ENGINE**

  Appears when the coolant temperature is too hot.

  Pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

  Let the engine idle until it is cool.

  See the following for more information:

  - Engine Coolant Temperature Gage
  - Overheat Protection Mode

***NOTICE***

Continuing to drive your vehicle with an overheated engine can result in severe engine damage.

If you get an overheat warning, stop as soon as possible.

See "Engine Overheating" in Section 5 for more information.

- **ENGINE OVERHEATED -- STOP ENGINE**

  Appears when the engine has overheated. A chime will also sound. Stop and turn the engine off immediately to avoid severe damage. See "Engine Overheating" in Section 5.

  The message will disappear when the engine has cooled.

***NOTICE***

Continuing to drive your vehicle with an overheated engine can result in severe engine damage.

If you get an overheat warning, stop as soon as possible.

See "Engine Overheating" in Section 5 for more information.

- **ENGINE POWER IS REDUCED**

  This message indicates that the engine cooling system temperature is too hot and that the system has further entered the engine overheat protection mode.

  See "Engine Overheating" in Section 5 for more information.

  A chime will also sound.

  There may be a noticeable reduction in the vehicle's performance.

  This also can affect the vehicle's ability to accelerate.

  If this message appears with no reduction in vehicle performance, proceed to your destination. The next time the vehicle is driven, acceleration and speed may be reduced. Drive at a reduced speed.

  If this message continues to appear, have the system repaired as soon as possible to avoid engine damage.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 69 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



- **HEATED WASHER FLUID SYSTEM OFF**

  Appears when the heated washer fluid system is turned off either manually or automatically.

  See the following, later in this section, for more information:

  - Windshield Washer

    Heated Washer Fluid

- **HEATING WASH FLUID -- WASH WIPES PENDING** (heating washer fluid -- wash wipes pending)

  Appears when the heated washer fluid system is turned on and the system is heating the washer fluid.

  See the following, later in this section, for more information:

  - Windshield Washer

    Heated Washer Fluid

- **HOOD OPEN**

  Appears if the hood is not completely closed.

  A chime will also sound.

  Close the hood.

- **ICE POSSIBLE -- DRIVE WITH CARE**

  Appears when the outside temperature is cold enough to create icy road conditions.

  Adjust your driving accordingly.

- **LEFT REAR DOOR OPEN**

  Appears with a chime when the left rear door is open or ajar and the vehicle is shifted out of **P** (Park).

  Make sure that there are no obstructions in the way of the door and close the door.

- **OIL PRESSURE LOW -- STOP ENGINE**

  If this message appears while the engine is running, stop and turn the engine off immediately. **Do not** use the vehicle until the problem is fixed.

  Check the oil level.

  See "Engine Oil" in Section 4 for more information.

***NOTICE***

Do not keep driving with low oil pressure. Severe engine damage can result from driving the vehicle with low oil pressure. Check the oil as soon as possible and have your vehicle serviced.

**Do not** use the vehicle until the problem is fixed.

- **PARKING ASSIST OFF**

  Appears when the vehicle is started while the ultrasonic rear parking assist feature is disabled.

  This is a reminder that the system is off and will not warn you of objects in your path.

  For information about this system, see "Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist" later in this section.

- **PASSENGER DOOR OPEN**

  Appears with a chime when the front passenger door is open or ajar and the vehicle is shifted out of **P** (Park).

  Make sure that there are no obstructions in the way of the door and close the door.

- **REAR ACCESS OPEN**

  Appears when the liftgate or liftglass is open or ajar while the ignition is on.

  A chime will also sound and the interior lights will turn on.

  Close the liftgate and liftglass securely.

- **REMOTE KEY LEARNING ACTIVE** (remote keyless entry transmitter learning active)

  Appears while a remote keyless entry transmitter is being matched to the vehicle.

  See the following, earlier in this section, for more information:

  - Vehicle Information Menu

    **PRESS ✓ TO RELEARN REMOTE KEY**

  Also, see "Remote Keyless Entry" in Section 3.

- **REPLACE BATTERY IN REMOTE KEY** (replace battery in remote keyless entry transmitter)

  Appears if the remote keyless entry transmitter battery is low. Replace the battery.

  See "Battery Replacement" under "Remote Keyless Entry" in Section 3 for information.

- **RIGHT REAR DOOR OPEN**

  Appears with a chime when the right rear door is open or ajar and the vehicle is shifted out of **P** (Park).

  Make sure that there are no obstructions in the way of the door and close the door.

- **SERVICE AIR BAG**

  Appears if there is a problem with the air bag system. See your dealer for service.

  See "Air Bag Light" earlier in this section for more information.

- **SERVICE BATTERY CHARGING SYSTEM**

  Note: This message may not be available on all vehicles.

  Appears if there is a problem with the electrical charging system. Have the system checked right away. Driving while this message is on could drain your battery. If you must drive a short distance with this message on, turn off your accessories, such as the radio and air conditioner.

  The Charging System Light may also appear on the instrument cluster. See your dealer for service.

  See "Charging System Light" under "Warning Lights" earlier in this section for more information.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 73 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



- **SERVICE BRAKE SYSTEM**

  Appears if there is a problem with the brake system.

  The brake system warning light will also be on.

  Stop the vehicle and turn the engine off to reset the system. Restart the vehicle. If the message reappears, the vehicle needs service.

  See "Brake System Warning Light" earlier in this section.

  Also, see "Brakes" in Section 3 for more information on the brake system.

- **SERVICE BRAKES SOON**

  Appears if there is a problem with the brake system.

  Stop the vehicle and turn the engine off to reset the system. Restart the vehicle. If the message reappears, the vehicle needs service.

  See "Brakes" in Section 3 for more information on the brake system.

- **SERVICE PARKING ASSIST**

  Appears if there is a problem with the ultrasonic rear parking assist feature.

  Do not use the parking assist feature while this message is displayed.

  See your dealer for service.

  For information about this system, see "Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist" later in this section.

- **SERVICE STABILITRAK**

  Appears if your stability enhancement system is malfunctioning.

  To reset the system, stop and turn the ignition off.

  Wait about 15 seconds before restarting the engine.

  If the message still stays on, or if it comes on again while you're driving, your vehicle needs service.

  Take the vehicle to the dealer as soon as possible to have the system checked.

  When this message is displayed, the system is not operational and you should adjust your driving accordingly.

  See "Stabilitrak System" later in this section for more information.

- **SERVICE SUSPENSION SYSTEM**

  Appears when the suspension system is not working properly.

  See your dealer for service.

- **SERVICE THEFT DETERRENT SYSTEM**

  Appears when there is a problem with the theft deterrent system programmed into the key.

  The vehicle usually restarts, but you may want to take the vehicle to a proper service center before turning off the engine.

  See "PASS-Key® III Plus Electronic Immobilizer System" in Section 3 for more information.

- **SERVICE TRACTION CONTROL**

  Appears if there is a problem with the Traction Control System.

  When this message is displayed, the system is not operational and you should adjust your driving accordingly.

  See your dealer for service.

  See "Stabilitrak System" later in this section for more information.

- **STABILITRAK OFF**

  Appears when the stability enhancement system is turned off using the Stabilitrak button or when Stabilitrak has been automatically disabled.

  This message will also appear under the following conditions:

  - The stability system is overheating due to continuous use for an extended period of time.
  - The brake system warning light is on.

    See "Brake System Warning Light" earlier in this section.
  - The stability system takes too long to complete its diagnostic checks due to driving conditions.
  - There is an engine-related problem.

    See your dealer for service.

  The message will turn off once conditions are back to normal.

  See "Stabilitrak System" later in this section for more information.

- **TIGHTEN GAS CAP**

  Appears if the fuel cap has not been fully tightened, is missing or has been improperly installed.

  The Malfunction Indicator Light should illuminate.

  Check the fuel cap to be sure that it is properly installed.

  After a few driving trips, this message and light should turn off.

  See "Malfunction Indicator Light" earlier in this section for more information.

- **TRACTION CONTROL OFF**

  Appears when the traction control system is turned off.

  Adjust your driving accordingly.

  See "Stabilitrak System" later in this section for more information.

- **TRANSMISSION HOT -- IDLE ENGINE**

  Appears if the transmission fluid is too hot. Stop and idle the engine until the message is removed.

  You will hear four chimes when this message is displayed.

  Pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

  Let the engine idle until it is cool.

  The message will disappear when the fluid has cooled.

**NOTICE**

Driving the vehicle with the engine and transmission temperature above the normal operating range could damage your vehicle.

This could lead to costly repairs not covered by your warranty.

- **TURN SIGNAL ON**

  Appears with a chime if a turn signal is left on for more than 1.2 km (0.75 miles).

  See "Turn Signal" under "Multifunction Lever" later in this section for more information.

- **WASHER FLUID LOW -- ADD FLUID**

  Appears when the washer fluid level is low.

  Adding washer fluid will clear the message.

  See "Windshield Washer Fluid" in Section 4 for information.

### *ANALOG CLOCK*

Your vehicle is equipped with an analog clock located on the instrument panel.

To set the clock:

- Locate the adjust button to the lower left of the clock
- Press and hold the button to spin the clock hands.

  Release the button before you get to the desired time.
- Press and release the button to increase the clock by one minute intervals until the desired time is reached.

Your vehicle is also equipped with a digital clock viewable in the navigation system display that operates independently of the analog clock.

See the separate navigation system manual to find out how to set the clock.

### *DRIVER INFORMATION CENTER BUTTONS*

See "Driver Information Center Buttons" earlier in this section for more information.

### *GEAR SHIFT LEVER*

See "Automatic Transmission" in Section 3 for information.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 79 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



### *LIGHTS*

The main light switch is on the instrument panel. See "Lights", later in this section, for more information.

### *HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM*

Your vehicle is equipped with a heating and air conditioning system. See "Heating and Air Conditioning" later in this section for more information on how to operate the system.

### *NAVIGATION SYSTEM*

For information on how to use this system, see the separate navigation system manual.

### *HOOD RELEASE*

Use the hood release handle, located on the lower left side of the instrument panel, to open the hood. See Section 4 for more information.

### *PARKING BRAKE RELEASE (IF EQUIPPED)*

The parking brake release is on the left side of the instrument panel. Pull the handle to release the parking brake.

See "Parking Brake" in Section 3 for more information on how to properly set and release the parking brake.

## ■ STABILITRAK® SYSTEM

This system combines antilock brake, traction and stability control systems to help maintain directional control under most driving conditions.

When the system senses that there is a discrepancy between the intended path and the direction the vehicle is travelling, it selectively applies the brakes to help steer the vehicle.

The system comes on automatically when you start the engine.

When you first start the vehicle and begin to drive away, the Stabilitrak system performs several diagnostic checks to ensure that there are no problems.

You may feel or hear the system working, but this is normal.

The system should be done initializing before the vehicle reaches a speed of 32 km/h (20 mph). In some cases, it may take approximately two miles of driving before the system completes initialization.

If the system fails initialization, one of the following messages will appear on the Driver Information Center display:

- **TRACTION CONTROL OFF**
- **SERVICE TRACTION CONTROL**
- **STABILITRAK OFF**
- **SERVICE STABILITRAK**

The Stabilitrak Indicator Light will come on and stay on.

Turn the steering wheel left to the nine o'clock position and then right to the three o'clock position. Doing this may clear the message. If the message still appears, you may need to reset the system.

To reset the system, do the following:

1. Stop the vehicle and turn the engine off.
2. Wait about 15 seconds before restarting the engine.

   If the message reappears, the vehicle needs service.

If neither the messages nor the light appears, the system has properly initialized and is ready to help maintain directional control under slippery road conditions.

If the vehicle begins to go in a direction other than that intended by the driver, the Stabilitrak system activates.

Adjustments will be made automatically to try to regain control of the vehicle.

You may feel or hear the system working, but this is normal.

When the Stabilitrak system activates, the Stabilitrak Indicator Light will flash.

You should normally leave the system in its normal operating mode, however make sure to turn the system off if the vehicle is stuck in mud, sand or snow.

See "If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck" in Section 5.

It may also be necessary to turn off the system when driving in extreme off-road conditions where high wheel spin is required.

Press and hold the Stabilitrak button for more than five seconds to turn off Stabilitrak and part of the traction control system.

The button is located on the instrument panel to the right of the sound system.

When the system is turned off, the Stabilitrak Indicator light will turn on and **STABILITRAK OFF** will appear in the Driver Information Center display.

The vehicle will still have brake-traction control when Stabilitrak is off, but the engine speed management system will be disabled.

To return the system to its normal operating mode, press the button again.

Stabilitrak may also turn off automatically if a problem is detected within the system.

If the problem does not clear itself after restarting the vehicle, see your dealer for service.

### *Stabilitrak Traction Control*

Traction control is part of the Stabilitrak system.

The system comes on automatically when you start the engine.

When the system senses that any of the wheels are spinning or beginning to lose traction, it selectively applies the brakes and/or reduces engine power to limit wheel spin.

The Stabilitrak Indicator Light will flash.

You should normally leave the system in its normal operating mode, however make sure to turn the system off if the vehicle is stuck in mud, sand or snow.

See "If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck" in Section 5.

It may also be necessary to turn off the system when driving in extreme off-road conditions where high wheel spin is required.

Press the Stabilitrak button to turn the system off.

The button is located on the instrument panel to the right of the sound system.

The Stabilitrak light should turn on.

The **TRACTION CONTROL OFF** message will appear on the Driver Information Center.

To return the system to its normal operating mode, press the button again.

When Stabilitrak is turned off, only the brake-traction control portion of traction control will work.

Engine speed management will be disabled.

Brake-traction control may activate more frequently.

***NOTICE***

Do not allow the wheel(s) of one axle to spin excessively when the Stabilitrak, antilock brake and brake system warning lights are on and a Stabilitrak/Traction Control message is displayed.

Otherwise, the transfer case could be damaged.

This could lead to costly repairs not covered by your warranty.

Immediately reduce engine power until the lights and messages are no longer displayed.

The traction control system may activate on rough roads, during heavy acceleration while turning, or when the transmission abruptly upshifts or downshifts.

When this happens, vehicle acceleration may be reduced.

You may feel or hear the system working, but this is normal.

If your vehicle is in cruise control when the Stabilitrak system begins to limit wheel spin, the cruise control will automatically disengage.

The Stabilitrak Indicator Light will flash.

Once conditions are back to normal, you may turn the cruise control back on.

Stabilitrak may also turn off automatically if a problem is detected within the system.

If the problem does not clear itself after restarting the vehicle, see your dealer for service.

## ■ ACCESSORY POWER OUTLETS

***NOTICE***

Maximum load of any electrical equipment should not exceed 20 amps.

Leaving electrical equipment on for extended periods of time can drain your battery.

Always turn off any electrical equipment that is not in use.

Outlets can be used to plug in electrical equipment such as a cellular telephone, CB radio, etc.

There are three accessory power outlets.

The front power outlet is located in the center console storage compartment.

One rear power outlet is located on the rear of the center console.

The other rear power outlet is located on the passenger's side of the rear cargo area.

To use an outlet, remove the cap.

When not in use, always cover the outlets with the protective caps.

**NOTICE**

Adding some electrical equipment to your vehicle can damage it or keep other things from working properly. This damage wouldn't be covered by your warranty. Check with your dealer before adding electrical equipment and never use anything that exceeds the fuse rating.

When adding electrical equipment, be sure to follow the proper installation instructions included with the equipment.

Certain accessory power plugs may not be compatible with the power outlets in your vehicle. Use of such plugs may result in blown vehicle or adapter fuses. If you experience a problem, see your dealer for more information on the accessory power plugs.

**NOTICE**

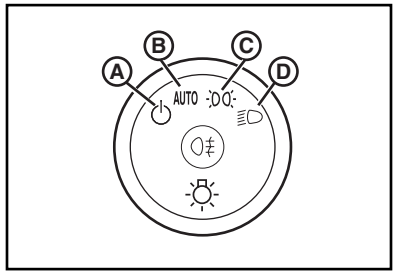
Power outlets are designed for accessory plugs only. Do not hang any type of accessory or bracket from the plug. Improper use of the power outlet may result in damage not covered by your warranty.

## ■ LIGHTS

### *LIGHTS MAIN SWITCH*

The main light switch controls these light systems:

- Headlights
- Taillights
- Parking lights
- License lights
- Sidemarker lights
- Rear Fog Lights
- Instrument panel lights




Rotate the knob to Ⓒ to turn on your parking and other operating lights. The headlights will not come on.

Rotate the knob to Ⓓ to turn on your headlights. The parking and other operating lights will also come on.

To change the lights from low beams to high beams, push the multifunction lever toward the front of the vehicle. To change the lights back to low beams, pull the lever back toward you. When the high beams are on, an indicator light on the instrument cluster will also be on.

Note:

Power to the exterior lights and to most interior lights is automatically turned off 10 minutes after the ignition is turned off.

If you want the headlights to stay on for an additional 10 minutes, use the main light switch to turn them back on manually.

Rotate the knob to Ⓑ to activate the automatic headlight system.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 87 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



When activated, this automatic headlight feature turns your headlights and other operating lights on and off by sensing how dark it is outside.

See "Automatic Headlight System" later in this section for more information.

Rotate the knob to Ⓐ to turn off the exterior lights and automatic lighting features.

To turn the automatic headlight system back on, rotate the knob to the off position again, then release it.

Press the button, located on the main light switch, to turn the rear fog lights on and off.

See "Rear Fog Lights" later in this section for more information.

**Lights On Reminder**

If you open any door while the lights' manual control is on and the key is not in the ignition, you will hear a warning tone.

There are two ways to turn off this feature:

- Rotate the knob to turn the lights off and then back on.
- Close and re-open the door.

### *Automatic Headlight System*

When activated, this automatic headlight feature turns your headlights and other operating lights on and off by sensing how dark it is outside.

In order for this feature to work properly, be sure not to cover the light sensor on the top of the instrument panel.

Rotate the knob to **AUTO** to activate this system.

If it is dark outside, your vehicle's headlights and operating lights will turn on automatically.

Once it is bright enough outside, the headlights and operating lights will automatically turn back off.

The lights may also turn on when you drive through a low-light area.

Once you leave the low-light area, it may take about one minute before the automatic headlights turn off. During this brief delay, the instrument cluster may not be as bright as usual. Make sure the instrument light dimmer is set to full brightness. See "Instrument Light Dimmer" later in this section.

To idle the vehicle with the automatic headlight system off, rotate the knob all the way to the left.

To turn the automatic headlight system back on, rotate the knob to the off position again, then release it.

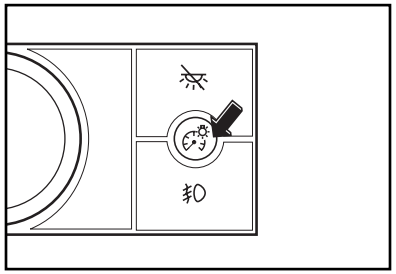
You should turn on the regular headlight system when you need it.

If the automatic headlight system has the headlights turned on and you turn the ignition off, the exterior lights will stay on for a period of delayed illumination while you leave the vicinity of the vehicle.

Use the Driver Information Center to turn this feature on or off and to increase or decrease the length of the delayed illumination period.

See the following under "Driver Information Center" earlier in this section for more information:

- Feature Customization
  - **EXIT LIGHTING**



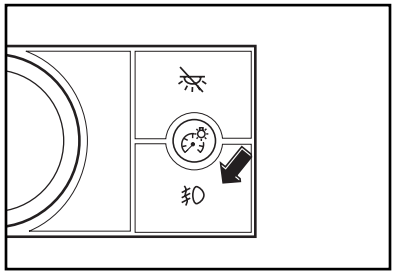
### *Instrument Light Dimmer*

The instrument light dimmer controls the brightness of the instrument panel lights.

The control is located near the main light switch.

Press lightly on the knob to make it spring out.

Then, rotate the knob to the right to increase brightness and to the left to decrease brightness. Rotate the knob all the way to the right to turn on the interior lights.



### *Front Fog Lights*

Use fog lights for better vision in foggy or misty conditions.

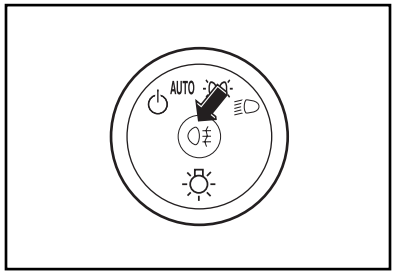
The fog lights only operate if the ignition is on.

Press the switch to turn your front fog lights on and off.

The headlights will turn on automatically.

When the fog lights are on, the Fog Lamp Light on the instrument cluster will also be on.

# Instrumentation and Controls




## *Rear Fog Lights*

Press the button, located on the main light switch, to turn the rear fog lights on and off.

The rear fog lights only operate if the headlights and/or the front fog lights are on.

When the rear fog lights are on, the indicator light will also be on.

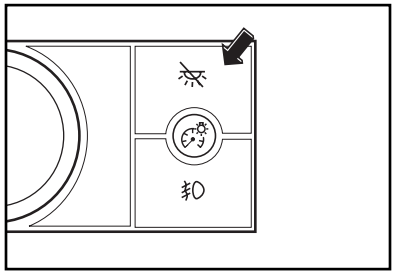
The rear fog lights may not turn on when a trailer is connected to the vehicle. The trailer's rear fog lights will be on instead (if equipped).

## *Dome Lights*

The dome lights come on automatically when you open the doors.

To keep the lights from turning on, see "Dome Lights Override Button".

To turn the lights on manually, whether the doors are open or closed, rotate the instrument light dimmer all the way to the right.



**Dome Lights Override Button**

This button is located on the instrument panel next to the headlights control.

If this button is pressed in, the interior lights will not come on when you open the doors. When the button is in the out position, the interior lights operate in the normal manner.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 91 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



### *Illuminated Entry/Exit System*

When a door is opened, some interior lights will turn on to illuminate your entry into the vehicle.

When the key is removed from the ignition, some interior lights will turn on to illuminate your exit from the vehicle.

The exit lights will stay on for about 20 seconds.

To keep the lights from turning on, see "Dome Lights Override Button".

### *Reading Lights*

Your vehicle may have reading lights. These lights have on/off switches next to them.

Press the switch to turn the lights on and off.

### *Battery Saver*

See "Battery Rundown Protection" later in this section.

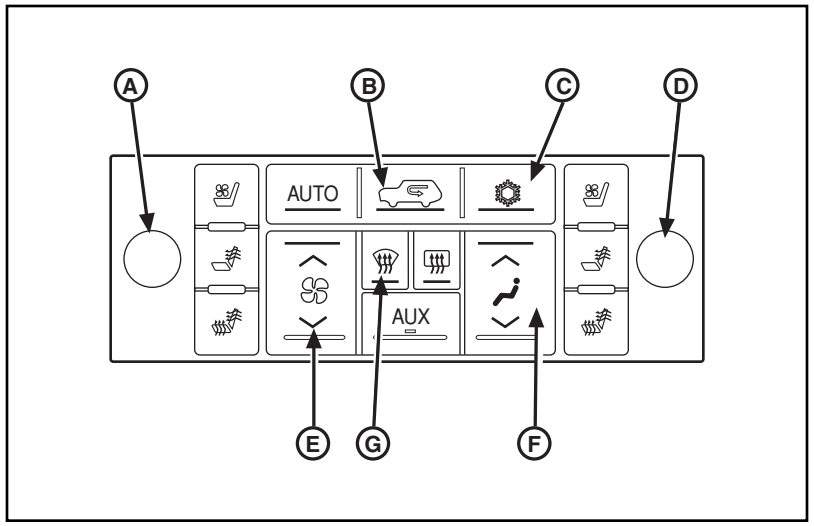
## ■ INSTRUMENT PANEL SWITCHBANK

The switchbank is on the instrument panel, below the Heating and Air Conditioning system.

This switchbank may contain the following controls:

- Adjustable Accelerator and Brake Pedals Control
- Heated Washer Fluid Button
- Power Running Boards Control (If equipped)

If your vehicle does not have an option controlled by one of the switches listed above, the option's switch will be replaced with a blank switch.




## ■ HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM

### *AUTOMATIC DUAL ZONE CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM*

Dual zone climate control systems allow the driver and the front seat passenger to independently select desired air temperatures.

The desired temperature is controlled by information from interior sensors, a sun sensor, and an exterior temperature sensor.

In order for the automatic climate control system to work properly, be sure not to cover the sensors.

See "Sensors" later in this section.

Press the driver's temperature knob, fan, defrost, **AUTO** or air conditioning button on the climate control panel to turn the system on.

If you press **AUTO** to turn the system on, you will activate the Automatic Mode. See "Automatic Mode" later in this section.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 93 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



**OFF SETTING**

Press the knob Ⓐ to turn the system on or off.

The system display will turn on when the system is on.

Air will still flow through the floor ducts when the system is off.

Even while the system is off, you can still adjust the temperature and the air delivery mode.

If the temperature or air delivery mode settings are adjusted when the system is off, the display will show the new setting briefly before turning off.

When the system is off, you can also press the fan, defrost, **AUTO** or air conditioning button on the climate control panel to turn the system back on.

**TEMPERATURE CONTROL**

You can choose from 15°C (60°F) to 32°C (90°F).

However, if the system is in the automatic mode and you choose 15°C (60°F) for maximum cooling or 32°C (90°F) for maximum heating, the system will remain at the maximum cooling or heating setting.

Choosing the maximum heating or cooling setting will not cause the system to heat or cool any faster.

**Driver Temperature Control**

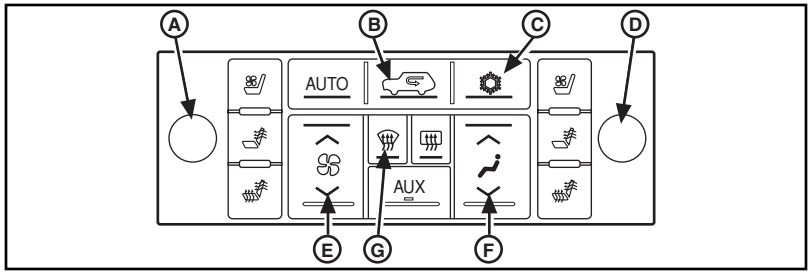
Rotate the driver's side knob Ⓐ to choose the temperature you want inside the vehicle.

Rotate the knob clockwise to increase or counterclockwise to decrease the temperature.

The display will show the temperature setting.

Even while the system is off, you can still adjust the temperature.

# Instrumentation and Controls




**Passenger Temperature Control**

Press Ⓓ to turn the passenger's temperature control on and off.

Rotate the knob Ⓓ clockwise to increase or counterclockwise to decrease the temperature for the front passenger zone.

If the temperature settings are different, the passenger-set temperature will appear on the display with the driver-set temperature.

Even while the system is off, you can still adjust the temperature.

If you would like to reset the passenger's temperature to be the same as the driver's, press Ⓓ to turn off the passenger's control.

**AUTOMATIC MODE**

In order for the automatic climate control system to work properly, be sure not to cover the sensors.

See "Sensors" later in this section.

1. Press **AUTO** to turn the system on and activate the automatic mode.

   **AUTO** will appear on the display.

   When **AUTO** is selected, the display will show the current fan speed, air delivery mode and temperature for about five seconds.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 95 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



2. Adjust the temperature to a comfortable setting.

   See "Temperature Control" earlier in this section.

   It may take up to 20 minutes for the system to regulate.

   Readjust the temperature as needed.

In the automatic mode, the system will automatically control the inside temperature, air delivery mode and the fan speed to achieve your set temperature as quickly as possible.

If you would like to reset the passenger's temperature to be the same as the driver's, press Ⓓ to turn off the passenger's control.

The A/C compressor will operate in this mode if the outside temperature is above 4°C (40°F).

The automatic mode will also activate the recirculation feature when it is hot outside and quick cooling is needed.

In cold weather, the system will delay turning on the fan to avoid blowing cold air into the vehicle.

If you would like to override this delay, press the fan switch to manually select a fan speed.

**MANUAL MODE**

**Fan Speed Selector**

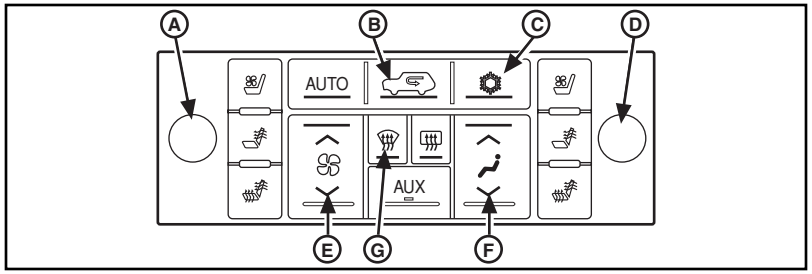
Use Ⓔ to manually control the fan speed. Press the top part of the switch to increase fan speed and the bottom part of the switch to decrease fan speed.

If this control is pressed while the system is in automatic mode, **AUTO** will disappear from the display.

The current fan speed will appear on the display.

The system will continue to control the air delivery mode automatically.

# Instrumentation and Controls




**Air Outlet Selector**

Press the up or down arrow on switch Ⓕ to stop the automatic operation and to manually select one of the modes controlling the direction of airflow. The display shows the selected mode.

If this control is pressed while the system is in automatic mode, **AUTO** will disappear from the display.

The system will continue to control the fan speed automatically.

Pressing Ⓕ when the system is off will change the air delivery mode without turning the system on.

Whenever the system is turned off, the display goes blank after displaying the current setting.

This mode directs airflow through the instrument panel outlets.

The blending mode directs airflow through both the instrument panel outlets and the floor outlets. Some air may go to the windshield and side window vents. The air coming from the floor outlets may be slightly warmed.

The heater mode directs most of the airflow through the floor outlets, with some air going to the windshield and side window defroster vents.

Use this mode to direct air to the rear of the vehicle.

The recirculation function cannot be activated in this mode.

This mode divides airflow between the windshield defroster vents, the floor outlets and the side window defroster vents.

Use this mode to remove fog from the windshield or side windows while also heating the vehicle.

The A/C compressor will automatically operate in this mode if the temperature is above 4°C (40°F).

The recirculation function cannot be activated in this mode.

Do not drive the vehicle unless all windows are clear of fog, snow, ice or anything else that may obstruct your vision.

**Defrosting**

Press Ⓖ to get fog or ice off the windshield and side windows.

This mode divides airflow between the windshield defroster vents, the floor outlets and the side window defroster vents.

The A/C compressor will automatically operate in this mode if the temperature is above 4°C (40°F).

The recirculation function cannot be activated in this mode.

Do not drive the vehicle unless all windows are clear of fog, snow, ice or anything else that may obstruct your vision.

**Recirculation**

Press the recirculation button Ⓑ to recirculate the air in your vehicle. This is useful for keeping dust and odors out or when quick cooling is desired.

The recirculation symbol will appear on the display when this feature is active.

The A/C compressor comes on while the system is in the recirculation mode.

Press the button again or turn off the ignition to stop the recirculation function.

The recirculation function cannot be activated in a heating, defogging or defrosting mode.

If you try to activate the recirculation feature when it is not available, the indicator light will flash three times to let you know that the function will not operate.

Using this mode in cold and damp weather may cause the windows to fog up.

To defog the windows quickly, use the defog or defrosting mode and set the fan at the highest speed.

**A/C Compressor Button**

Press © to turn the air conditioning compressor on.

The indicator light will appear on the display.

The system will cool and dehumidify the air inside the vehicle.

Press the button again to turn this feature off.

Air conditioning will be automatically disabled if the outside temperature drops below a level at which compressor operation is effective.

If you try to activate the air conditioning feature when it is not available, the indicator light will flash three times to let you know that the function will not operate.

The indicator light will turn off.

When the temperature is above freezing, the air conditioning compressor will run in defog and defrost modes to help remove moisture from the air.

You may notice water drip under the engine sometimes after driving with air conditioning on. This is normal.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 99 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



### AUX (auxiliary) Button

To operate the rear climate control system, press **AUX** on the front climate control system to turn the system on and off.

See the following, later in this section, for more information:

- Automatic Rear Air Conditioning/Heating

### SENSORS

In order for the automatic climate control system to work properly, be sure not to cover the sensors.

The climate control system uses the information from the sensors to adjust the outlet temperature, fan speed and air delivery mode.

### Solar Sensor

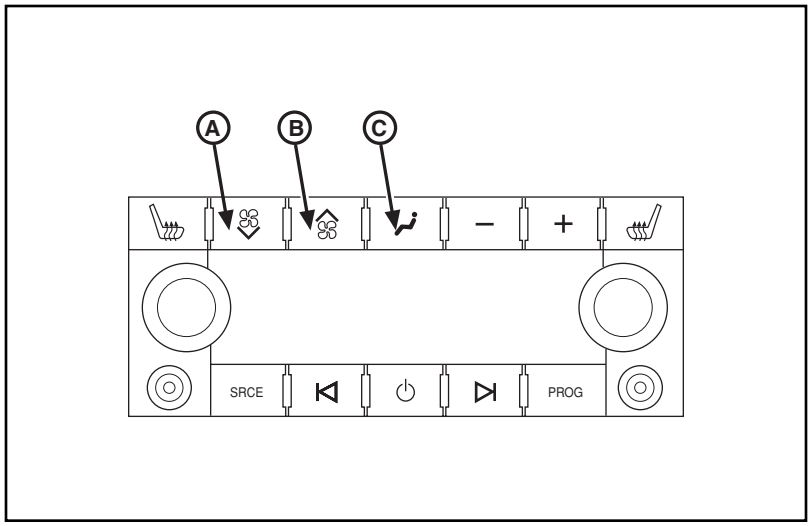
The sensor is located on top of the instrument panel, near the windshield.

### Temperature Sensors

The inside temperature sensor is located in the headliner above the front seats.

The outside temperature sensor is located at the front of the vehicle, behind the grille.

Any cover on the front of the vehicle may cause the system to give a false temperature reading.




## *AUTOMATIC REAR AIR CONDITIONING/HEATING*

Your vehicle is equipped with a rear climate control system.

The rear air conditioner/heater controls are integrated into the Rear Seat Audio system's control panel.

To operate the rear climate control system, do any of the following:

- Press **AUX** on the front climate control system to turn the system on and off.

  The indicator light in the button will glow when the system is on.
- Press the increase fan speed button Ⓑ, the mode button Ⓒ, or the plus (+) or minus (-) button on the rear control panel to turn the system on.
- Press Ⓐ repeatedly to turn the system off.

  If the **AUX** indicator light is off, the rear climate control system is off.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 101 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



If the rear system is first turned on using the front climate control system, the system will be in "mimic" mode. All settings for the rear system will match those currently set for the front system.

When you adjust the settings for the rear system using the rear control panel, the front and rear systems will operate independently.

If the rear settings do not match the front settings, the settings will appear on the rear display.

**AUTOMATIC MODE**

Press © repeatedly until **AUTO** is displayed.

Press either the plus (+) or minus (-) button to increase or decrease the temperature.

The system will automatically control the inside temperature, air delivery mode and the fan speed.

When automatic operation is active, the word **AUTO** appears on the display.

If the rear settings do not match the front settings, the settings will appear on the rear display.

**MANUAL MODE**

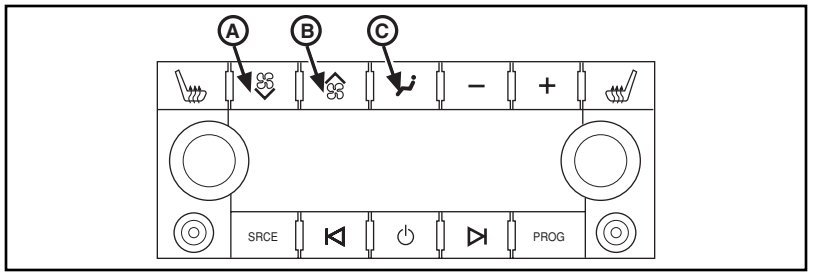
**Fan Speed Selector**

Press the up arrow Ⓑ to stop the automatic mode and to manually increase the amount of airflow through the system.

Press the down arrow Ⓐ stop the automatic mode and to decrease the fan speed.

The system will still control the air delivery mode.

# Instrumentation and Controls




**Temperature Control**

Press either the plus (+) or minus (-) button to increase or decrease the temperature.

**Air Outlet Selector**

Press © repeatedly to stop the automatic mode and to manually select the direction of airflow. The display shows the selected mode.

## *OPERATING TIPS*

Before using the air conditioning system, open the windows for a few minutes to permit hot air to escape. Close the windows when using the air conditioning system.

Keep the hood and front air inlet free of ice, snow, leaves or any other obstruction.

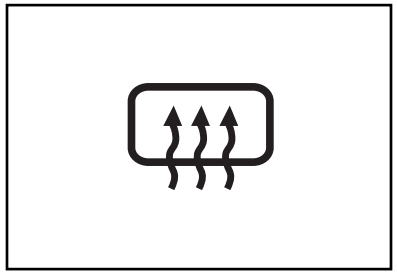
In cold weather, set the fan at the highest speed when you first enter the vehicle to clear the intake ducts of snow and moisture to reduce the chance of fogging the inside of your windows.

Keep the area under the front seats clear of objects to help air circulate through the vehicle.

Adding equipment to the front of your vehicle may keep the climate control system from working properly. Check with your dealer before adding equipment to the outside of your vehicle.

### *AIR OUTLETS*

Angle the front outlets up, down, right or left to direct airflow as desired.



### *REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER*

Press this button to defog your rear window. To turn it off, press the button again or turn off the ignition. Otherwise, it will go off by itself after several minutes. To make it turn back on, just press the button again.

The power mirrors are also heated every time the rear defogger is activated.

**NOTICE**

Don't use a razor blade or anything else that is sharp on the inside of the rear window. You could cut or damage the warming grid.

The repairs would not be covered by your warranty.

Do not attach anything across the defogger grid on the rear window.

## ■ SOUND SYSTEM AND CLOCK

***NOTICE***

Added sound equipment - like a CB radio, mobile telephone or two-way radio - may interfere with the operation of your vehicle's engine, radio or other systems, and even damage them.

Likewise, your vehicle's systems can interfere with the operation of the added sound equipment.

Check with your dealer before adding equipment to your vehicle.

Also check applicable rules covering mobile radio and telephone units.

***NOTICE***

The radio is your vehicle's chime producer.

If your vehicle's radio is removed and is not replaced with a factory radio, or if a chime module is not installed, your vehicle's chimes will be disabled.

See "Accessories and Modifications" for more information.

Your vehicle is equipped with a navigation system. The radio is integrated into that system's control panel. See the separate manual for the navigation system and its radio for further information.

In order for this feature to work, the ignition must be on or Retained Accessory Power must be active.

While your vehicle is parked, take the time to familiarize yourself with the system controls and operation, and to set up various features.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 105 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



That way, you will be able to use the system with less effort and less distraction from the road.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Avoid or minimize any sound system or navigation system activities while operating your vehicle.

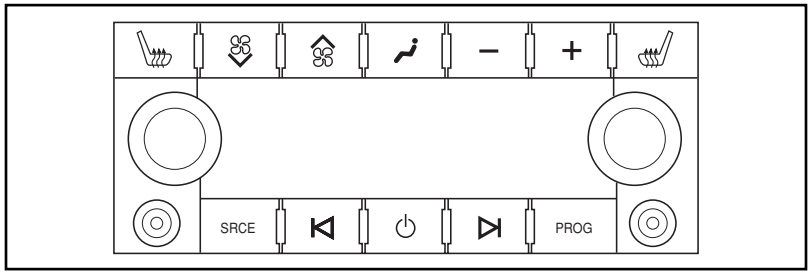
Giving extended attention to entertainment tasks while driving will greatly increase the risk of a collision that may cause personal injury or death.

Road safety has absolute priority. Only operate this system if the road and traffic conditions allow you to do so. The driver's full attention is always required while driving.

Cellular phone usage may cause interference with your vehicle's radio. This interference may occur when making or receiving phone calls, charging the phone's battery or simply when the phone is on. This interference is described as an increased level of static while listening to the radio. If you notice static while listening to the radio, unplug the cellular phone and turn it off.

Interference may also be caused by other equipment (cell phone chargers, vehicle convenience accessories, or external electronic devices) plugged into the accessory power outlet.

If you notice interference or static, unplug the device from the accessory power outlet.




## *REAR SEAT AUDIO*

**⚠ *CAUTION***

This feature is intended to be used only by rear seat passengers.

This feature allows the rear seat passengers to select and control any of the available audio sources (AM-FM, compact disc, DVD or auxiliary source, if equipped).

Note:

Some features may be inactive if the front and rear seat passengers are listening to the same source.

Audio output from this system can be heard using wired headphones (not included) or your vehicle's speakers.

If your vehicle is equipped with the optional Rear Seat Entertainment System, audio output can be heard using the wireless headphones.

See the separate Rear Seat Entertainment System guide for information.

This system accommodates up to two sets of wired headphones.

The rear seat audio system can be used even when the front, main system is off.

To listen to a portable audio device using this system, connect the device to a rear auxiliary input jack and turn on the device.

Then, if necessary, press **SRCE** to select the auxiliary device source.

See "Source Selection" later in this section for more information.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 107 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



**Power Control**

Press ⏻ to turn the rear seat audio system on. Press it again to turn the system off.

**Volume Control**

The left knob controls the volume for the left set of wired headphones, and the right knob controls the volume for the right set of wired headphones.

Rotate the volume knob to increase or decrease the volume.

**Source Selection**

Press **SRCE** to switch between the available audio sources:

- Radio
- DVD Player
- CD Changer
- Rear Auxiliary Device (If equipped and connected)

**Seeking**

Press the ⏮ button and the radio will go to the next lower station and stay there.

When listening to a CD or an audio DVD, press this button to seek to the beginning of the current or previous track/chapter.

If the track/chapter has been playing for under 10 seconds, the system goes to the previous track. If the track has been playing longer than 10 seconds, the system restarts the current track/chapter.

Press the ⏭ button and the radio will go to the next higher station and stay there.

To tune to a specific frequency, press and hold either ⏭ or ⏮ until the display flashes. Then, press the left or right seek arrow to increase or decrease the station frequency by only one increment.

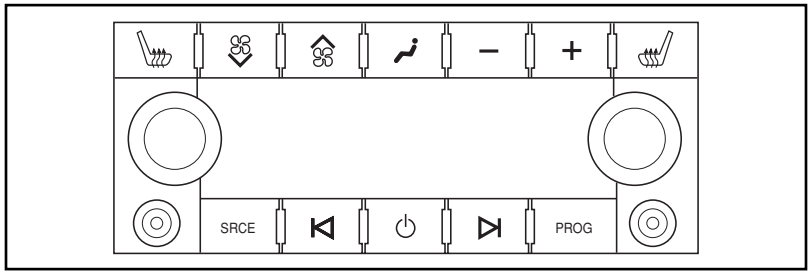
After a few seconds of inactivity, the display will stop flashing and show the currently tuned station.

When listening to a CD, press this button to seek to the next track.

If your vehicle is equipped with the Rear Seat Entertainment System, this control can be used to navigate disc menus.

See the separate Rear Seat Entertainment System guide for information.

# Instrumentation and Controls




**PROG Button**

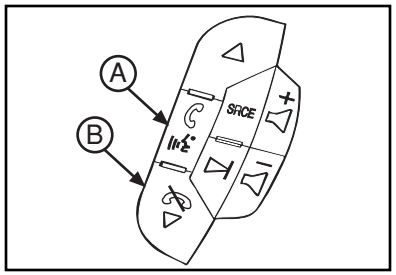
When the radio is selected as the rear seat audio source, press the **PROG** button to seek through the stations that are preset on the main radio's push-buttons.

When listening to a CD or an audio DVD, press this button to seek to the beginning of the current or previous track/chapter.

When a disc is playing from the CD or DVD changer, press this button to select the next disc in the changer.

If your vehicle is equipped with the Rear Seat Entertainment System, this control can be used to navigate DVD menus.

See the separate Rear Seat Entertainment System guide for information.




## *AUDIO STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS*

Your vehicle has radio controls mounted on the steering wheel.

Press Ⓐ to silence the system's speakers. If the rear seat occupants are listening to the headphones, the sound will not be muted.

Press it again to turn the sound back on.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 109 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



With the navigation system, button Ⓐ controls the voice recognition system. For information on how to use this system, see the separate navigation system manual.

Press the up arrow to move quickly to the next preset radio station, or to jump to the next selection if you are listening to a CD or DVD.

Press Ⓑ to move quickly to the previous preset radio station, or jump to the previous selection if you are listening to a CD or DVD.

Press **SRCE** to switch between the available audio sources:

- AM Band
- FM1 Band
- FM2 Band
- CD Changer
- DVD Player
- Rear Auxiliary Device (If equipped and connected)

Pull + ◁ or – ◁ toward you to increase or decrease the volume.

Press ▷| to tune the radio to next station.

The radio will not stop on stations with weak reception.

If you are listening to a CD or DVD, the system will advance to the next track/chapter or the next disc, if multiple discs are loaded.

## *ANTI-THEFT FEATURE*

The theft deterrent feature is automatically enabled and therefore no programming is necessary.

The theft deterrent feature automatically learns part of the vehicle identification number.

When the ignition is turned off, the system will automatically arm itself.

Your radio will not operate if it is stolen.

### *ANTENNA*

The antenna is integrated into the rear side windows.

Damage to the inside surfaces of the rear side windows can cause interference with radio reception.

***NOTICE***

Don't use a razor blade or anything else that is sharp on the inside of the rear side windows.

Do not apply aftermarket glass tinting. The metallic film in some tinting materials will interfere with or distort the incoming radio reception.

Any resulting damage would not be covered by your warranty.

If you choose to add an aftermarket cellular phone to your vehicle, and the antenna needs to be attached to the glass, be sure not to damage the existing grid lines. Do not place the cellular phone antenna over the existing grid lines.

## ■ NAVIGATION SYSTEM

The navigation system is located at the center of the instrument panel.

The system consists of control buttons and a touch-sensitive screen and is equipped with a navigation guidance system with route planning.

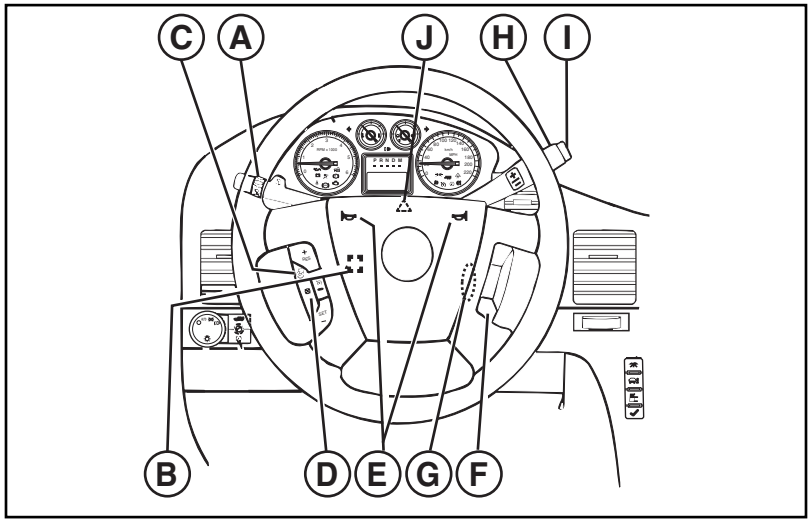
For information on how to use this system, see the separate navigation system manual.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 111 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



## ■ CONTROLS MOUNTED ON STEERING WHEEL/COLUMN

You will find the following controls mounted on the steering wheel or steering column.

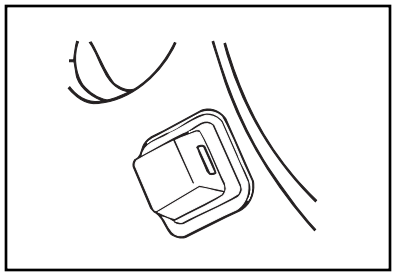



### *Multifunction Lever*

Use this lever Ⓐ to control the following features:

- Headlight High/Low Beams
- Turn Signals
- Windshield Wipers/Washer
- Rear Wiper/Washer

See "Multifunction Lever" later in this section for additional information.



### *Power Tilt Wheel Switch*

You can move the steering wheel to any one of several different positions.

Move the switch Ⓑ in the direction you want the wheel to move. Press the switch up or down to tilt the wheel up or down.

**Do not** use the upper most position as a driving position. The air bag will not be effective if the steering wheel is in this position. It is recommended that you use the upper most position only for entry and exit.

See the following for more information:

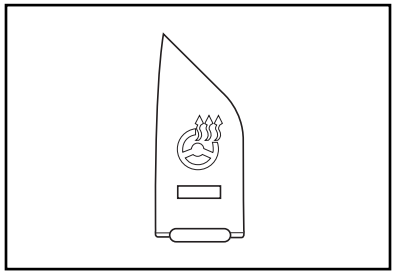
- Feature Customization
  - **EASY EXIT SETUP**
  - **EASY EXIT SEAT**
  - **MEMORY SEAT RECALL**

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 113 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM





### *Heated Steering Wheel (If equipped)*

The control button Ⓒ is located on the steering wheel.

Press the button to heat the steering wheel. The indicator light on the button will glow when the system is on.

The steering wheel will take a few minutes to reach its warmest temperature.

### *Cruise Control Buttons*

Use these buttons Ⓓ to control your cruise control system. See "Cruise Control" later in this section for more information.

### *Horn*

Sound the horn by pressing anywhere on the steering wheel pad Ⓔ.

### *Audio Steering Wheel Controls*

Your vehicle is equipped with steering wheel-mounted radio controls Ⓕ. See "Sound System and Clock" earlier in this section for more information.

### *Ignition Switch*

See Starting and Operating Instructions for additional information on the ignition switch Ⓖ.

### *Gearshift Lever*

See "Starting and Operating Instructions" for additional information on the Gearshift Lever Ⓗ.

### *Tow/Haul Button*

Press and release the button Ⓘ to turn the tow/haul mode on or off.

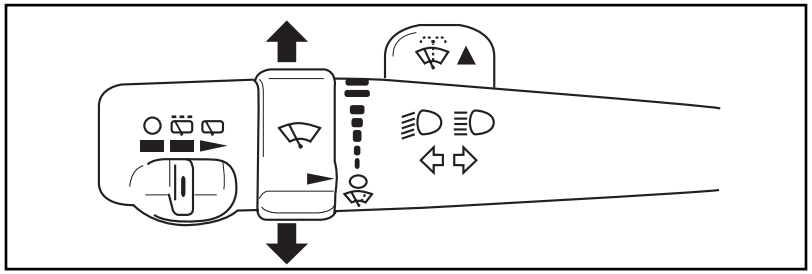
See "Tow/Haul Mode" under "Trailer Towing" in Section 3.

To turn grade braking on or off, press and release the tow/haul button located at the end of the shift lever.

See "Grade Braking" in Section 3 for more information.

### *Hazard Warning Flasher*

Press the flasher switch Ⓙ in to make your front and rear turn signal lights flash on and off. It works whatever position your ignition key is in, and even if the key isn't in the ignition. To turn the flasher off, press the switch down again. When the flasher is on, the function of the turn signal lever is cancelled.



## ■ MULTIFUNCTION LEVER

### *Turn Signal*

To signal a turn, move the lever all the way up (right) or down (left). When the turn is over, the lever will return automatically. To signal a lane change, press the lever for less than one second and the turn signal will automatically flash three times. If more flashes are desired, hold it there until you complete your lane change. An arrow on the instrument cluster will flash in the direction of the turn or lane change.

If Tow/Haul Mode is activated when you signal a lane change, the turn signal lights will flash six times.

Your vehicle is equipped with side repeater lights.

The side repeater lights come on whenever the turn signal lights are on.

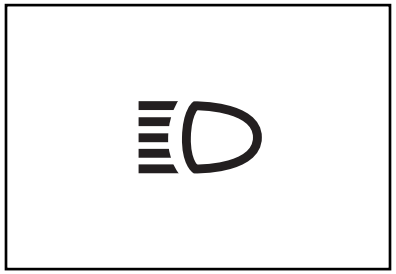
If the arrows flash at a faster rate than normal, a signal bulb may be burned out. Check the front and rear signal lights to make sure they are working properly.

The turn signal arrows on the instrument cluster will not flash faster when a side repeater light is burned out. Check the side repeater lights periodically to make sure they are working properly.

If a bulb is burned out, replace it to help avoid an accident. If the green arrows don't go on at all when you signal a turn, check the fuse and for burned-out bulbs.

See "Fuses and Circuit Breakers" in Section 4 for additional information.

If a turn signal is left on for more than 1.2 km, a chime will sound and the **TURN SIGNAL ON** message will appear on the Driver Information Center display to remind you to turn it off. If you need it on longer, turn the signal off, then back on.



### *High-Low Beam Control*

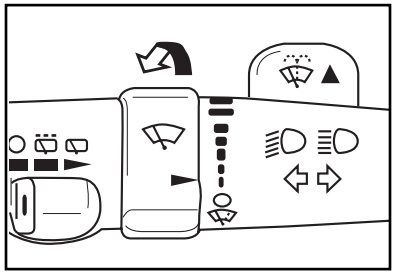
When the headlights are turned on and the lever is in the center position, the headlights are set to low beams.

To change the lights from low beams to high beams, push the lever toward the front of the vehicle. To change the lights back to low beams, pull the lever back toward you. When the high beams are on, an indicator light on the instrument cluster will also be on.

You may be able to flash your high beams to signal other drivers.

To do this, pull the multifunction lever toward you.

Then release the lever.



### *Windshield Wipers*

**NOTICE**

Clear any ice or snow from the wiper blades before using them to prevent damage to the blades and overloading the wiper motor.

Rotate the band to turn on the wipers.

For a single wiping cycle, rotate the band to the "mist" setting .

AKENG44_Escalade Page 117 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



For more cycles, hold the band in this position.

For steady wiper cycles, rotate the band upward to one of the two highest positions, depending on the wiper speed you want.

In light rain or snow, you can use the delay feature. Turn the band to one of the delay settings to choose the desired delay time between sweeps. The closer the setting is to the top of the lever, the shorter the delay.

The wipers are protected by a circuit breaker and a fuse. If there is an electrical overload, the wiper system will stop until the motor cools.

To turn off the wipers, rotate the band to the "off" setting O.

Wiper blades will eventually wear out and not wipe properly, reducing forward vision. Replace worn wiper blades.

**Rain Sensitive Wipers**

A sensor is mounted on the windshield near the rearview mirror.

The sensor monitors the amount of moisture on the windshield and automatically operates the wipers accordingly.

The rain sensitive wiper system can be activated by turning the wiper band to one of the five sensitivity levels indicated on the stalk. Turn the band towards you for minimum sensitivity and away from you for maximum sensitivity.

The wipers will operate in a delay mode as well as a continuous low or high speed, depending on the sensitivity level and amount of moisture.

To override this feature and operate the wipers manually, move the stalk up to the low or high speed position.

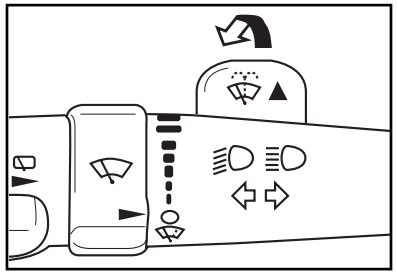
***NOTICE***

Turn the wipers off before going through a car wash to avoid damage.

The mist and washer features operate as normal. They are not affected by the Rain Sensitive Wipers feature.

If the automatic headlight system is on, the exterior lights will automatically come on when the windshield wipers have operated for eight cycles.

If it has been more that three minutes since the last wipe, the headlights will turn off.

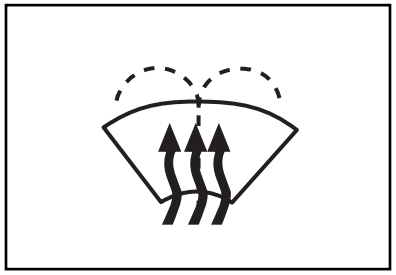


**WINDSHIELD WASHER**

At the top of the multifunction lever there's a paddle with the windshield washer symbol on it. To spray washer fluid on the windshield, just push the paddle and release. The wipers will clear the window and then either stop or return to your preset speed.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Don't use the washer fluid in freezing weather until your windshield is warmed so that ice doesn't form and block your vision.



**Heated Washer Fluid**

The switch is located in the instrument panel switchbank below the Heating and Air Conditioning system. For information on this switchbank, see "Instrument Panel Switchbank" earlier in this section.

The ignition has to be on for this feature to work.

Push the button to initiate four heated wash/wipe cycles.

Press it again to turn it off.

After you press the switch, the first cycle may be delayed as long as 40 seconds depending on the outside temperature. A 20-second interval may occur between the remaining cycles.

The system will turn itself off after four cycles have been completed.

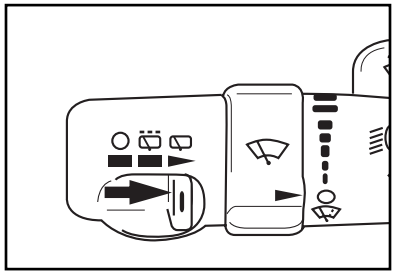
When the system is activated under some outside conditions, steam may flow out of the washer nozzles before the washer fluid is sprayed. This is normal.

**HEATING WASH FLUID -- WASH WIPES PENDING** may appear on the Driver Information Center when the washer system is heating the washer fluid.

If the washer fluid reservoir is low on fluid, **WASHER FLUID LOW -- ADD FLUID** will appear on the Driver Information Center display.

See "Driver Information Center Messages" earlier in this section for more information.

For refilling the windshield washer reservoir, see "Windshield Washer Fluid" in Section 4 for information.



### *Rear Wiper/Washer*

The switch near the end of the multifunction lever activates the rear wiper/washer.

To turn the rear wiper on, slide the lever to .

For a delayed wiper cycle, slide the switch to .

To spray washer fluid on the rear window, press the button located at the end of the lever.

For more cycles, press and hold the button.

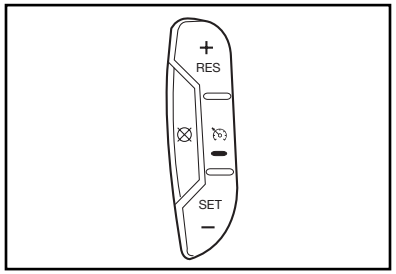
To turn the rear wiper off, move the switch to O.

If the liftgate or liftglass is not properly closed, the rear wiper/washer will not operate.

If you open the liftgate or liftglass while the rear wiper/washer is on, this feature will turn off.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Don't use the washer fluid in freezing weather until your window is warmed so that ice doesn't form and block your vision.




## ■ CRUISE CONTROL

With cruise control, you can maintain a speed of about 40 km/h (25 mph) or more without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.

The control buttons are located on the steering wheel.

When the cruise control is set, the Cruise Control Light on the instrument cluster will come on.

If your vehicle is in cruise control when the traction control system begins to limit wheel spin, the cruise control will automatically disengage.

See the following for more information:

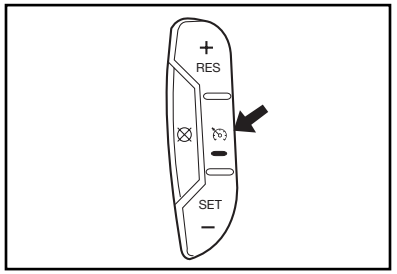
- Stabilitrak® System

Once conditions are back to normal, you may turn the cruise control back on.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

It is dangerous to use cruise control in heavy traffic, or on slippery or winding roads.

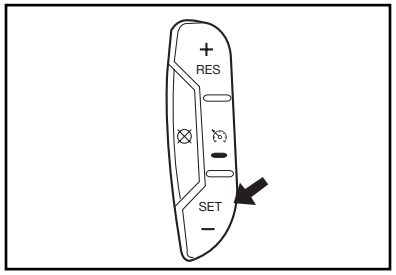
Cruise control will not work if the parking brake is set or if the master cylinder brake fluid level is low.




**To Set Your Cruise Control**

1. Press the cruise control button.
2. Accelerate to the speed you want.

# Instrumentation and Controls




3. Press the **SET** button and release it.
4. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

The Cruise Control Light on the instrument cluster should turn on.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

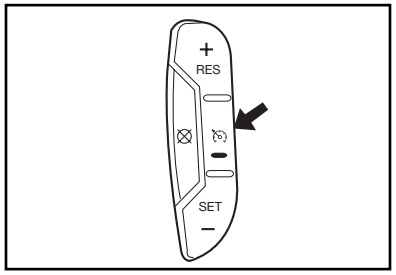
Don't leave your cruise control switch on when you're not using it.

**To Get Out of Cruise Control**

To temporarily turn off cruise control without erasing the set speed memory, do the following:

- Step on the brake pedal. Or,
- Press the cruise control cancel button ⊗.

The Cruise Control light will turn off.




To turn off cruise control and erase the set speed memory, do the following:

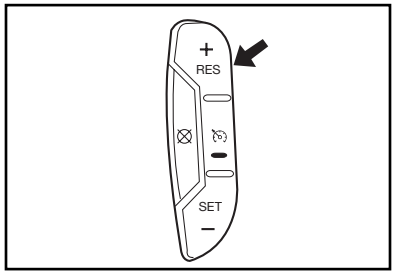
- Press the cruise control button.

  or

- Turn off the ignition.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 123 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



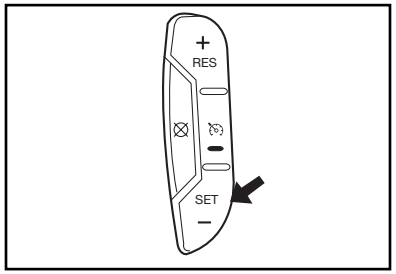



### To Go Back to Your Set Speed

If you have temporarily turned off cruise control without erasing the set speed memory, do the following to re-engage cruise control:

- Once you're going about 40 km/h (25 mph) or more, press the plus (+) button for a moment. You'll go right back up to your chosen speed and stay there.

When you push the plus (+) button to return to your chosen speed, **don't hold the switch there**. If you hold it, the vehicle will accelerate and continue to gain speed. It will keep going faster until you release the switch or apply the brake.




### To Go to a Higher Speed

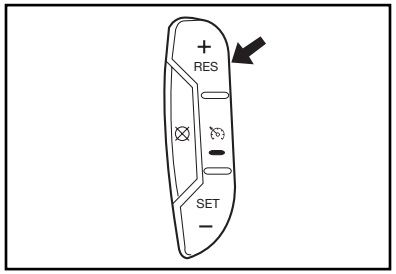
To go to a higher speed, do any of the following:

- Use the accelerator pedal to get to the higher speed.

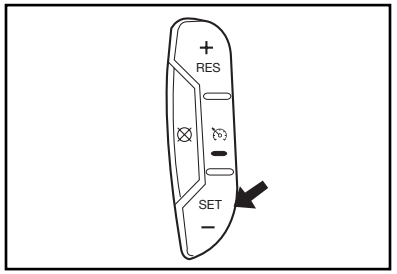
  Press **SET**.

  Release the button and the accelerator pedal. You'll now cruise at the higher speed.

# Instrumentation and Controls




- Press and hold the plus (+) button. You can hold it there while you accelerate to the new speed. When the vehicle has reached the chosen speed, release the button. The vehicle will now maintain the higher speed.
- Tapping the switch will increase your vehicle's speed by 1.6 km/h (1 mph) for each tap.




**To Go to a Slower Speed**

- Press and hold the **SET** button.

  Your vehicle will slow down. When it gets to the lower speed you want, let go of the button. The vehicle will maintain the lower speed.
- Tapping the button will lower your vehicle's speed by 1.6 km/h (1 mph) for each tap.

**To Pass Another Vehicle When You're in Cruise Control**

Just use the accelerator pedal when you need more speed. When you take your foot off the pedal, the vehicle will go back down to your previously chosen cruise control speed and stay there.

### Using Cruise Control on Hills

How well the cruise control system will work on hills depends on several factors:

- vehicle speed
- vehicle load
- steepness of the hill

When going up steep hills, you may need to use the accelerator pedal to maintain your speed.

When going downhill, you may need to use the brake pedal to control the vehicle's speed.

Applying the brakes disengages cruise control.

Cruise grade braking is activated whenever cruise control is used while tow/haul mode is active.

See the following in Section 3 for more information:

- Grade Braking and Cruise Grade Braking

## ■ MIRRORS

### *Outside Mirrors*

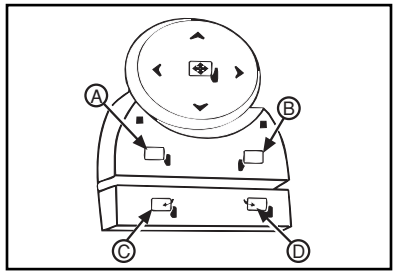
Adjust the outside mirrors so that you just see the side of your vehicle when you are sitting in a comfortable driving position.

Both outside mirrors are convex.

A convex mirror's surface is curved so you can see more from the driver's seat.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

A convex mirror makes objects appear to be farther away than they really are. Check your inside mirror or glance over your shoulder before changing lanes.




**POWER MIRRORS**

The controls are located on the driver's door armrest.

Press Ⓐ to select the left mirror or Ⓑ to select the right mirror.

To adjust the mirror, use the round control.

Push the side of the control that matches the direction you want the mirror to move.

When you are finished, press button Ⓐ or Ⓑ again to deselect the mirror.

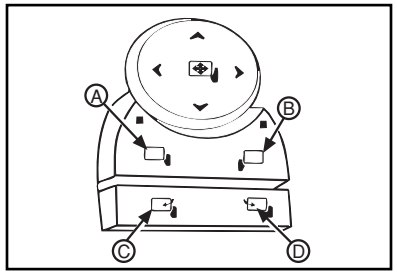
If the automatic dimming feature on the inside day/night mirror is turned on, the driver's side mirror automatically dims to minimize glare and improve rearview visibility. When the glare decreases, the mirror returns to its normal state.

See "Automatic Inside Day/Night Mirror" later in this section for more information.

**HEATED MIRRORS**

The power mirrors are heated every time the rear defogger is activated.

See "Rear Window Defogger" under "Heating and Air Conditioning System" earlier in this section for more information.




**POWER FOLDING MIRRORS**

Your vehicle is equipped with folding outside mirrors. You should fold the mirrors inward to prevent damage when going through a car wash or parking on narrow streets.

To fold the mirrors inward, press the Ⓓ button located on the driver's door armrest.

To return the mirrors to their normal positions, press Ⓒ.

Do not fold or unfold the mirrors manually.

Otherwise, the mirrors may become disengaged.

A disengaged mirror may shake or flutter at normal driving speeds and may not stay in position.

If a mirror ever becomes disengaged, it will need to be reset.

To reset a mirror, fold and unfold it using the power controls.

**MEMORY SEAT, MIRRORS, STEERING COLUMN AND ADJUSTABLE PEDALS**

This feature allows two different drivers (driver number **1** or driver number **2**) to store and recall their own driver's seat positions (including recliner and lumbar adjustment), outside mirror positions, steering wheel and adjustable pedal positions.

The controls are located on the driver's door panel.

See "Memory Feature" later in this section for more information.

**CURB VIEW ASSIST MIRROR**

With this feature turned on, the passenger's and/or driver's mirror will tilt down whenever the vehicle is shifted into **R** (Reverse) to a pre-programmed position, allowing you to view the curb while you parallel park. If further adjustment is needed, use the power mirror switch.

A few seconds after you shift back out of **R** (Reverse) or if you turn off the ignition, the mirrors will return to their original position.

Use the Driver Information Center to enable or disable this feature.

See the following under "Driver Information Center" earlier in this section for more information:

- Feature Customization
  - **PARK TILT MIRRORS**

### *Automatic Inside Day/Night Mirror*

The mirror pivots so that you can adjust it up and down or side to side.

Your vehicle is equipped with the fully automatic inside rearview mirror which has an on/off button at the base of the mirror.

The system comes on automatically when you start the engine.

During the day the mirror reflects all the light from behind your vehicle. At night, when the glare is too high, it darkens to reflect only part of the light behind you.

To turn the automatic mirror feature on or off, press the ⏻ button.

The indicator light near the button will glow when the system is on.

This also activates the auto-dimming outside rearview mirror.

**NOTICE**

Do not spray glass cleaner directly onto the mirror. Use a dampened cloth or paper towel to clean the mirror.

### *Vanity Mirrors*

There are vanity mirrors located on the sun visors. The lights around the mirror will come on when you lift the cover, and they will go off when you close the cover.

## ■ WINDOWS

**⚠ CAUTION**

Leaving children, helpless adults, or pets in a vehicle with the windows closed is dangerous. They could be overcome by extreme heat and could suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke. Never leave a child, a helpless adult, or a pet alone in a vehicle, especially with the windows closed in warm or hot weather.

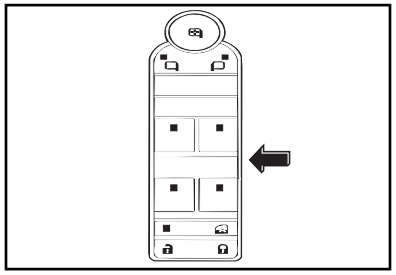
**⚠ CAUTION**

Do not leave children in the vehicle with the ignition key. They could operate the power windows or other controls and could even make the vehicle move. A child or others could be injured or even killed.

**⚠ CAUTION *(Continued)***

Children can be seriously injured or killed if caught in the path of a closing window.

When children are riding in the vehicle, use the window lockout feature to prevent them from operating the power windows.



## *Power Windows*

Power window switches on the driver's door control each of the windows when the ignition is in the **ON** or **ACC** (accessory) position or when Retained Accessory Power is active.

Each passenger door has a control switch for its own window.

To lower the window, press the switch.

To raise the window, pull up on the front of the switch.

The power windows are protected by a circuit breaker. If there is an electrical overload, the power window system will stop until the current load returns to normal or the problem is fixed.

**EXPRESS DOWN FEATURE**

Each window switch has an Express Down feature. The window can be opened a small amount by tapping the front part of the switch lightly. When the switch is pressed all the way down and released, the window will go down all the way.

To stop the window while it is lowering, tap the switch or pull the switch up briefly.

To raise the window, pull up on the front of the switch.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 131 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



### EXPRESS UP AND DOWN FEATURE

The driver's and front passenger's window switches have an Express Up and Down feature. The window can be opened a small amount by tapping the front part of the switch lightly. When the switch is pressed all the way down and then released, the window will go down all the way.

To stop the window while it is lowering, tap the switch or pull the switch up briefly.

To raise the window a small amount, pull up on the front of the switch lightly.

To activate the express close mode to fully close the window, lift the front of the switch to the second position, then release it.

To stop the window while it is closing, tap the switch or pull the switch up briefly.

### ANTI-PINCH FEATURE

If a head, hand or another object is in the way of the window as it is express-closing, the window will stop and open to a preset position.

The window will function normally once the obstruction is removed.

The anti-pinch feature may also be activated by certain weather conditions such as severe icing.

**Anti-Pinch Window Override Mode**

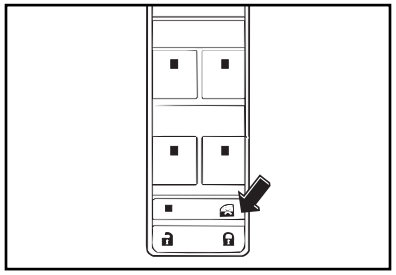
**⚠ CAUTION**

Lifting and holding the power window control will override the anti-pinch feature. If this happens, a power window will not stop if something gets in the way. You or others could be injured, and your window could be damaged. Be careful not to unintentionally press and hold the power window control.

Before overriding the anti-pinch feature, make sure that all people and obstructions are clear of the window's path.

To override the anti-pinch feature, lift and hold the power window switch in the express close position. The window will rise for as long as the switch is held. In this mode, the window will close on an object in its path. Use care when overriding the anti-pinch feature.

The express mode will operate normally once the switch is released.



**WINDOW LOCKOUT SWITCH**

There is a rear window lock switch which allows the driver to prevent passengers from operating the rear windows.

This button is located on the driver's door armrest, near the power window switches.

Press the lock-out button to disable the passengers' window controls. Press it again to turn them back on.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 133 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



The indicator light in the button will glow when the lock-out feature is activated.

You can control the passenger windows with the switches on the driver's door while this feature is activated.

**PROGRAMMING THE POWER WINDOWS**

If electrical power to the windows is interrupted, you'll need to reprogram the express close feature for each front window.

To reprogram a window once electrical power is restored:

1. Make sure the ignition is on or in the accessory position, or that Retained Accessory Power is active.
2. Close all doors.
3. Press and hold the window switch to fully open the window.
4. Pull up the window switch to fully close the window and keep holding the switch for about two more seconds.

   Release the switch.
5. Repeat the steps for the other front window.

## ■ DOORS

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Unlocked doors can be dangerous.

- Passengers - especially children - can easily open the doors and fall out of a moving vehicle if the doors are left unlocked. When a door is locked, the handle won't open it.
- Young children who get into unlocked vehicles may be unable to get out. A child could be overcome by extreme heat and could suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke. Always lock your vehicle whenever you leave it.

**⚠ *CAUTION (Continued)***

- If the doors are unlocked, your chances of being thrown out of the vehicle in a crash are increased. Wear your seat belts properly and lock the doors whenever you drive.
- Locking your doors when you drive can help prevent unwanted outsiders from entering your vehicle when you slow down or stop the vehicle.

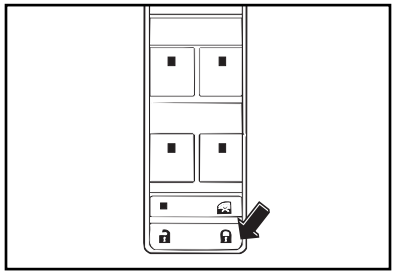
### *Manual Door Locks*

From the outside, use your key to lock or unlock the driver's door.

Note that there is no lock cylinder for the liftgate.

You may also use your remote keyless entry transmitter to lock or unlock the doors and the liftgate.

From the inside, use the manual door lock to lock and unlock each door individually.



## *Power Door Locks*

The front power door lock controls lock and unlock all the doors.

Press to lock all the doors and the liftgate.

Press to unlock all the doors and the liftgate.

From the outside, use your key to lock or unlock the driver's door.

Note that there is no lock cylinder for the liftgate.

You may also use your remote keyless entry transmitter to lock or unlock the doors and the liftgate.

See "Remote Keyless Entry" in Section 3 for more information.

Operating the remote keyless entry system may interact with the vehicle's theft deterrent system.

See "Theft Deterrent System" in Section 3 for more information.

**ANTI-LOCKOUT FEATURE**

This feature helps protect you from locking your keys in the vehicle.

If the driver's power door lock switch is pressed while the driver's door is open and the key is in the ignition, all the doors will lock and the driver's door will unlock.

If the passenger's power door lock switch is pressed while the passenger's door is open and the key is in the ignition, all the doors will lock and the passenger's door will unlock.

**DELAYED LOCKING**

If you press the power door lock switch while a door or the liftgate is open, you will hear three chimes, indicating that this feature is active. The doors will not lock. Five seconds after the last door is closed, all the doors will lock.

Any door can be reopened during the five second delay.

To override this feature and lock the doors immediately, either press the power door lock switch a second time or press the lock button on the remote keyless entry transmitter.

Use the Driver Information Center to enable or disable this feature.

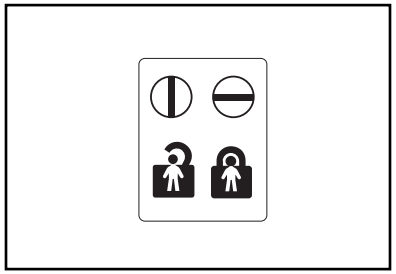
See the following under "Driver Information Center" earlier in this section for more information:

- Feature Customization
  - **DELAY DOOR LOCK**

**PROGRAMMABLE AUTOMATIC DOOR LOCKS**

This feature allows you to customize your automatic door locks to suit your needs.

To program the automatic door lock settings, see "Feature Customization" under "Driver Information Center" in Section 1.



## *Rear Door Security Lock*

The rear doors are equipped with locks that help prevent passengers, especially children, from opening the rear doors from inside.

The locks are located on the edge of each rear door.

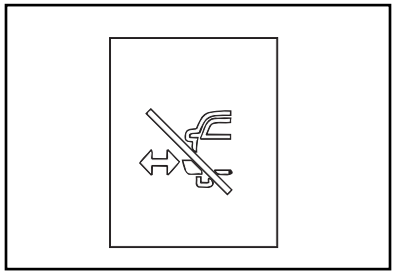
You must open the rear doors to access the locks.

When the security lock is engaged, you can lock and unlock the rear doors using the remote keyless entry, the front power door lock switch or by lifting the rear door lock manually. But the door can only be opened from the outside.

**Security Lock Activation**

To activate this feature, use the ignition key to turn the rear door security lock to the horizontal position, and then close the door. To open the door, unlock it and open it from the outside.

To deactivate this feature, use the ignition key to turn the rear door security lock to the vertical position.



### *Power Running Boards (If equipped)*

Power running boards automatically extend outward from the vehicle to make entering and exiting the vehicle easier.

When a door is opened, the running board for that side of the vehicle will extend.

When the door is closed, the running board will retract and remain underneath the vehicle until the door is opened again.

The vehicle must be stationary for this feature to work.

To disable this feature, press the disable switch located on the instrument panel switchbank.

Press the button again to restore normal operation.

Note: The running boards must be in the retracted position to be disabled.

**NOTICE**

Be sure to retract the power running boards before your vehicle goes through an automatic car wash.

Otherwise, the vehicle could be damaged and the repairs would not be covered by your warranty.

## ■ REAR CARGO AREA

**⚠ CAUTION**

It can be very dangerous to drive with the liftgate or liftglass open. Carbon monoxide (CO) gas can come into your vehicle. You cannot see or smell CO. It can cause unconsciousness and even death.

If you must drive with these open or with the seal between the body and liftglass or liftgate broken, make sure all windows are closed and turn the fan on to the highest speed using any setting that brings in outside air. Doing this will force outside air into the vehicle.

**⚠ CAUTION (Continued)**

Make sure that the air outlets on or under the instrument panel are fully open.

Disable the power feature for the liftgate. See "Power Liftgate" for more information.

The **REAR ACCESS OPEN** message will appear in the Driver Information Center when the liftgate or liftglass is not completely closed.

A chime will also sound and the interior lights will turn on.

See "Driver Information Center Messages" earlier in this section for more information.

### *Liftgate/Liftglass*

To operate the liftgate manually, the following conditions must be met:

- The transmission must be in **P** (Park).
- The rear wiper must be off.

  If you attempt to open the liftgate or liftglass with the rear wiper on, the liftgate or liftglass will not open until the rear wiper has been turned off.

If the vehicle's doors are unlocked using a power door lock switch or the remote keyless entry transmitter, then the liftgate and liftglass will also be unlocked.

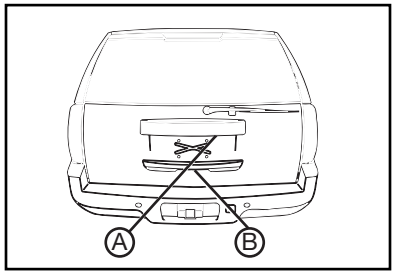
Note:

If you press the power liftgate button on the keyless entry transmitter when the vehicle is locked, the liftgate will open. All other doors will remain locked.

Press the power liftgate button again to close the liftgate. The liftgate will automatically lock.

For more information, see "Power Liftgate", following.

# Instrumentation and Controls




To open the entire liftgate, lift the handle Ⓑ.

Press the pushbutton Ⓐ on the liftgate to open the liftglass or press the liftglass release button on the remote keyless entry transmitter.

Both the liftgate and liftglass have an electric latch. If a low voltage condition occurs or the battery is disconnected, the liftgate and liftglass will not open.

The system will return to normal operation once battery power is restored.

If the system does not operate as described above, see your dealer for service.

See the following for more information:

- Rear Wiper/Washer
- Remote Keyless Entry

## *Power Liftgate*

**⚠ CAUTION**

You or others could be injured if caught in the path of the power liftgate. Make sure the path is clear before opening or closing the power liftgate.

**NOTICE**

Make sure that there are no overhead obstructions (such as a garage door) in the way of the liftgate before you open it. Otherwise, the liftgate glass could break and/or the liftgate could be damaged.

Your vehicle has a power liftgate.

To operate the power liftgate, the following conditions must be met:

- The liftgate must be in the completely open or completely closed position.
- The liftglass must be closed and latched.
- The transmission must be in **P** (Park).

  If the transmission is moved out of **P** (Park) while the liftgate is moving, the liftgate will continue to open or close.

  If you begin to drive before the liftgate is completely closed, the liftgate may stop and reverse direction to the full open position.

  Do not drive with the liftgate open.

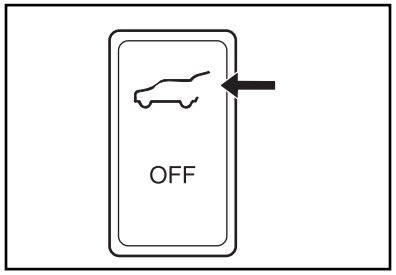
To use this feature, do any of the following:

- Press and hold the liftgate button on the remote keyless entry transmitter until the liftgate begins to open or close.

  If you press the button again while the liftgate is in motion, the liftgate will reverse direction.

  If the liftgate button is pressed while the power liftgate is disabled, the lights will flash to indicate that the power feature is inactive.

  See "Remote Keyless Entry" in Section 3 for more information.




- Press the top of the power liftgate button located in the overhead console.

  If you press the top of the button again while the liftgate is in motion, the liftgate will reverse direction.

  - Note:

    This feature will not work when the theft deterrent system is armed.

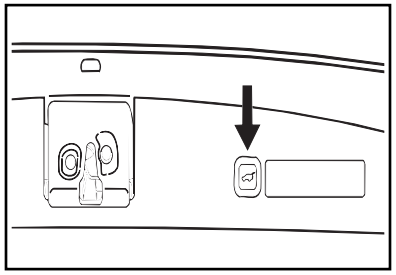
- Press the touch pad located on the liftgate handle.

  If you press touch pad again while the liftgate is in motion, the liftgate will reverse direction.

  - Note:

    All the doors must be unlocked for this feature to work.

The taillights will flash and a chime will sound while the liftgate is opening and closing.

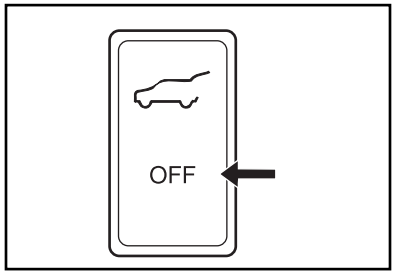


If the liftgate is open, pressing the button next to the liftgate latch will also close the power liftgate.

If you press the button again while the liftgate is in motion, the liftgate will reverse direction.

If the rear wiper is active when you press the power liftgate button, the rear wiper will move to the "parked" position as the liftgate opens.

The rear wiper will return to normal operation once the liftgate is closed.




To disable the power liftgate, press the bottom of the power liftgate button located on the overhead console.

Do not drive with the liftgate open, if possible.

If you must drive with the liftgate open, disable the power feature for the liftgate.

If the power liftgate is disabled, the liftgate may be opened or closed manually.

- To open the liftgate, pull up on the handle on the outside of the liftgate.
- To close the liftgate, pull down on the handle, then firmly shut the liftgate.

In extremely low temperatures, the power liftgate may be temporarily disabled.

Open or close the liftgate manually until the power liftgate function reactivates.

The **REAR ACCESS OPEN** message will appear in the Driver Information Center when the liftgate or liftglass is not completely closed.

A chime will also sound and the interior lights will turn on.

See "Driver Information Center" earlier in this section for information.

**Obstruction Detection Feature**

If the power liftgate presses against an obstruction while it is opening or closing, the liftgate automatically reverses direction.

A chime will also sound.

The power liftgate will function normally once the obstruction is removed.

If the power liftgate is not able to fully open or close because of multiple obstructions on the same cycle, the power function will deactivate when the liftgate contacts the obstruction and the liftgate will switch to manual operation.

The following message will appear in the Driver Information Center display:

- **REAR ACCESS OPEN**

See "Driver Information Center Messages" earlier in this section for more information.

To restore the power liftgate function:

1. Remove the obstruction.
2. Fully open or close the liftgate manually.

**Anti-Pinch Feature**

If an object presses against the sensors located on the sides of the liftgate while the power liftgate is closing, the power liftgate will reverse direction and open fully.

The power liftgate will remain open until it is activated again or closed manually.

**Power Liftgate System Problems**

Both the liftgate and liftglass have an electric latch. If a low voltage condition occurs or the battery is disconnected, the liftgate and liftglass will not open.

The system will return to normal operation once battery power is restored.

If the system does not operate as described above, see your dealer for service.

If the support struts that open the liftgate lose pressure while the power feature is opening the liftgate, the liftgate will remain open temporarily before slowly closing.

The taillights will flash and a chime will sound.

Do not use the liftgate until the problem is fixed.

See your dealer for service.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 145 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



### *Rear Area Storage*

Your vehicle may be equipped with a storage compartment located in the driver's side trim panel of the rear cargo area.

To open the storage compartment, rotate the knobs and open the lid.

### *Jack and Spare Tire Removal*

The jack is located in the rear area of your vehicle. See Section 5 for information on spare tire removal and changing a flat tire.

## ■ OVERHEAD AREA AND ROOF

### *Sun Visors*

To block out glare, pull the sun visor down or to the side.

You can also slide the visor along the rod as necessary.

Pull the visor outward, away from its mounting point. The visor will slide along its support rod.

When moved to the side, the sun visor will also slide forward and rearward.

**Vanity Mirrors**

There are vanity mirrors located on the sun visors. The lights around the mirror will come on when you lift the cover, and they will go off when you close the cover.

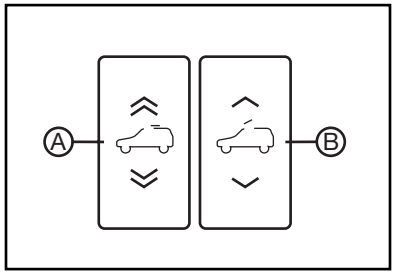
## *Sunroof (If equipped)*

**NOTICE**

Make sure not to leave the sunroof open for long periods of time. Debris may collect in the tracks.

Excessive debris may damage the sunroof operation and clog the water drainage system.

Your ignition must be on or the Retained Accessory Power must be active to open or close the roof.

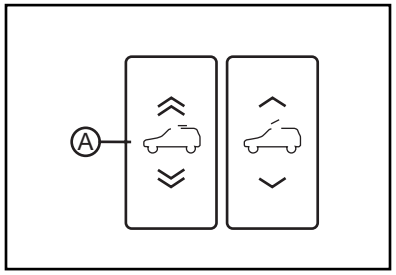



The switches are located on the overhead console.

The sunroof has two switches.

Switch Ⓐ is used to operate the manual retract and close functions as well as the express retract and close functions.

Switch Ⓑ is used to operate the vent and close functions.




**Manual Operation**

Press and hold the back of the sunroof switch Ⓐ to open the sunroof to a desired position.

Release the switch when the sunroof reaches the desired position.

The system has a feature which automatically opens the sunroof to a preset comfort position. Use this position to minimize noise and to make the passengers more comfortable.

To fully open the sunroof from the comfort position, press the switch again.

An air deflector will raise when the sunroof is fully opened.

To close the glass panel, press and hold the front of the switch.

Release the switch when the sunroof reaches the desired position.

**Express Feature**

To activate the express open mode and open the sunroof to the full-open position, press the back of the switch Ⓐ all the way down to the second position.

The system has a feature which allows you to automatically open the sunroof to a preset comfort position. Use this position to minimize noise and to make the passengers more comfortable.

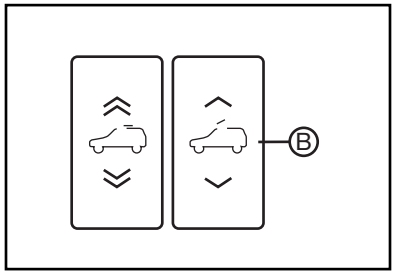
To fully open the sunroof from the comfort position, press the switch again.

An air deflector will raise when the sunroof is fully opened.

To activate the express close mode to fully close the sunroof, press the front of the switch Ⓐ all the way down to the second position and release it.

The ignition must be on for the express close feature to work.

If you want to stop the roof in a partially open position, a slight touch of the switch in either direction will stop it.




**Vent Position**

Once the glass panel is closed, press and release the rear of switch Ⓑ to open the sunroof to the vent position.

If you want to stop the roof in a partially open position, a slight touch of the switch in either direction will stop it.

To close the glass panel, press and hold the front of the switch.

Release the switch when the sunroof reaches the desired position.

**Sunshade**

Unless you are opening the sunroof to the vent position, the sunshade opens automatically when you open the sunroof.

The sunshade will remain open until you close it manually.

Open the sunshade by hand when using the vent position. The sunshade can only be closed by hand.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 149 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



**Anti-Pinch Feature**

If a head, hand or another object is in the way of the sunroof as it is closing from the retracted position, the glass panel will stop, open half-way, and the air deflector will raise fully. Once the obstruction is removed, the glass panel can be closed.

## *Luggage Carrier*

The luggage carrier has side rails and has moveable crossrails.

Tie the load to the side rails or side rail supports. Use the crossrails only to keep the load from sliding.

### ⚠ *CAUTION*

**Do not** carry anything heavier than 90 kg (200 lbs). Also, **do not** carry anything wider or longer than the luggage carrier (such as surf boards, wood panels, etc.) because the wind can catch it as you drive along and cause you to lose control. What you are carrying, or even the luggage carrier itself, could be violently torn off and cause a collision, injury or damage to your vehicle or someone else's property.

### *NOTICE*

- Loading cargo that weighs more than 90 kg (200 lbs) on the luggage carrier may damage the vehicle.
- When large things are loaded on the carrier, do not let them hang over the rear or sides of the vehicle.
- Load cargo so it rests on the roof, without damaging the vehicle.
- Place cargo against the side rails and fasten it securely to the luggage carrier.
- Load the heavier end of the cargo as far forward as possible.

Do not overload the vehicle.

See "Vehicle Loading" in Section 3.

Here are some things to keep in mind:

- When loading things on the roof of the vehicle, take care not to block or damage the center high-mounted stoplight.
- If small heavy objects are to be loaded onto the luggage carrier, place the load in the area over the rear wheels. If necessary, cut a piece of plywood to fit inside the crossrails and side rails to spread the load. Tie the plywood to the side rail supports.

Tie the load to the siderails or the siderail supports. Use the crossrails only to keep the load from sliding.

If you need to move crossrails forward or backward along the siderails, you must first loosen their release knobs by turning them counterclockwise.

Slide the crossrail to the desired position, balancing the force side to side.

Tighten the release knobs and try to slide the crossrail back and forth slightly to be sure it is securely in place.

- After moving a crossrail, be sure the crossrail is securely locked into the side rail.
- When carrying long items, move the crossrails as far apart as possible. Secure the load to the luggage carrier. Also tie the load to the bumpers. Do not tie the load so tightly that the crossrails or side rails are damaged.
- To prevent damage or loss of cargo while driving, check periodically to make sure that the cargo is still securely fastened.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 151 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



## ■ STORAGE

Your vehicle has many storage compartments.

### *CENTER CONSOLE*

The console between the front seats opens into a storage area.

The console has upper and lower storage areas.

To open the storage area, lift the latch and swing the compartment lid open.

There may be a power outlet located in the center console storage compartment.

See "Accessory Power Outlets" earlier in this section for more information.

Other features available on the rear of the center console include:

- rear seat audio controls
- accessory power outlet
- heated seat controls for the rear seats
- rear climate control
- rear cupholders

### *REAR SEAT ARMREST*

Your vehicle may be equipped with a rear seat armrest which opens into a storage compartment.

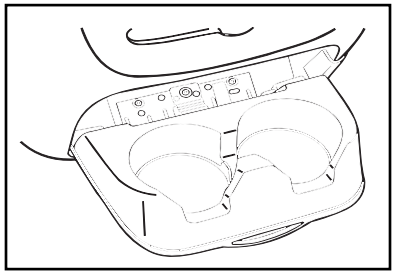
Pull the loop at the top of the armrest to pull the armrest down.

To open the compartment, press the button and swing the compartment lid open.

### *GLOVE BOX*

The glove box can be used to store small items. Use a key to lock and unlock it.

To open the glove box, pull upward on the bottom of the handle on the glove box door.



## *CUPHOLDERS*

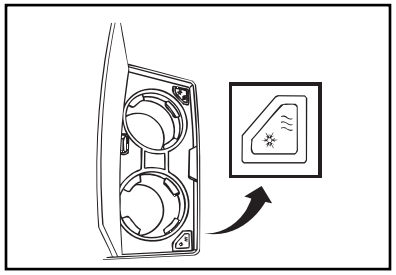
There is a dual-cupholder located behind a panel at the front of the center console. Press on the panel to open or close the cupholder.

The front cupholder may be removed for easy cleaning by pushing down and then back on the cupholder.

There is also a cupholder for the rear seat passengers located on the rear of the center console. Pull down the door to access the rear seat cupholders.

There may also be two cupholders located in the rear seat center armrest. To access the cupholders, fold the armrest down.

There may also be a cupholder available for third row passengers.



## *Heated and Cooled Cupholders (If equipped)*

The front cupholders may have a heating and cooling function.

- To activate the cooling function, press the button located next to the cupholder.

  When the cooling function is on, the snowflake symbol ✲ on the button will be blue.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 153 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



- To activate the heating function, press the button located next to the cupholder.

  When the heating function is on, the heat symbol ⌇⌇⌇ on the button will be red.

Press the button again to turn this feature off.

Use only non-insulated containers. Insulated containers will not work with the heated and cooled cupholder feature.

**NOTICE**

Condensation may form inside the cupholders due to temperature fluctuations.

Electronic devices or other items stored in the cupholders could be damaged.

Any resulting damage would not be covered by your warranty.

### *REAR AREA STORAGE*

See "Rear Cargo Area" earlier in this section.

### *LUGGAGE CARRIER*

See "Overhead Area and Roof" earlier in this section.

## ■ ASHTRAY AND LIGHTER

The front ashtray is located at the front of the center console.

Press and release the ashtray cover to open the ashtray.

To remove the ashtray, pull it out from the console.

**NOTICE**

Do not put papers and other things that burn into the ashtrays. If you do, cigarettes placed in the ashtrays could start them on fire.

To use the cigarette lighter, push it in and wait for it to pop out.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 154 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



**⚠ CAUTION**

Do not hold the cigarette lighter in with your hand while it is heating. If you do, it could damage the heater element and the mechanism which allows the lighter to pop out.

It can also blow the fuse.

## ■ RETAINED ACCESSORY POWER

Your vehicle has retained accessory power, which allows you to operate the following electrical accessories for up to 10 minutes after you turn the ignition off, unless a door is opened:

- Power Windows
- Sunroof (if equipped)

You can operate the radio for up to 10 minutes after the ignition has been turned off or until the driver's door is opened.

If you want this power for another 10 minutes, close all the doors and turn the ignition to **ON** and then back to **LOCK**.

## ■ BATTERY RUNDOWN PROTECTION

Power to the interior lights is automatically turned off 10 minutes after the ignition is turned off.

## ■ ULTRASONIC REAR PARKING ASSIST

**NOTICE**

If the rear bumper is damaged, the parking assist system may not work properly.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Use care when parking your vehicle. Always check for people, other vehicles and obstructions. Also check for blind spots.

The system is only able to detect objects according to the parameters specified in this section.

The system is not designed to detect children, pedestrians, bicyclists or pets.

Failure to follow these precautions can result in injuries or even death.

**⚠ CAUTION (Continued)**

The system will not detect objects that are below the bumper or under the vehicle, or some objects that are very close to the vehicle.

The maximum distance at which the system can detect objects may be reduced when the weather is warm or the humidity is high.

Adjust your driving accordingly.

This feature is designed to make rear and parallel parking easier by assisting you in determining how close the rear of your vehicle is to an object.

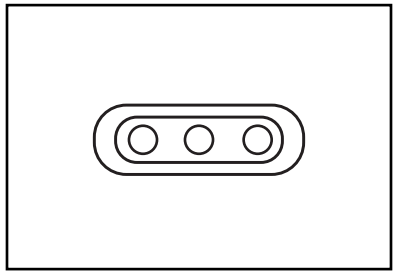
The system's sensors, located on the rear bumper, are used to detect the distance to an object behind the vehicle.

In order for the sensors to detect an object, the following conditions must be met:

- The object must be at least 25.4 cm (10 inches) above ground level.
- The object must be below the top of the vehicle.
- Vehicle speed must be less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

In order for a rear sensor to detect an object behind of the vehicle, the object must within 2.5 m (8 ft) of the rear bumper.

The system uses a combination of the display lights and chimes to warn you as the rear of the vehicle approaches an object.



The system's display, located inside the vehicle near the passenger-side rear window, can be seen by looking over your right shoulder.

When the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h (5 mph) and you shift into reverse gear, the system will turn on automatically. Three lights on the display will turn on to let you know that it is working.

A chime will sound when an object is first detected.

Note:

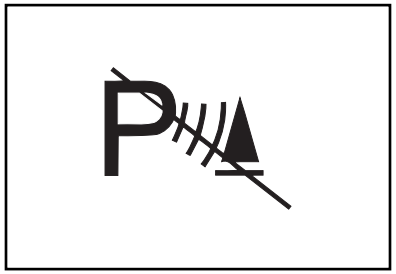
If the vehicle is traveling in **R** (Reverse) at a speed greater than 8 km/h (5 mph), the red light in the system's rear display will flash to alert you.

Use the following chart to interpret the display warnings and determine the distance between the vehicle and an object.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 157 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



| Warning (Lights and Chimes) | Distance |
|---|---|
| • one amber light | 1.0 m (3 ft) to 2.5 m (8 ft) |
| • two amber lights | 0.6 m (2 ft) to 1.0 m (3 ft) |
| • two amber lights & one red light<br>• continuous chime for five seconds | 0.3 m (1 ft) to 0.6 m (2 ft) |
| • two flashing amber lights & one flashing red light<br>• continuous chime for five seconds | 0.3 m (1 ft) or less |



The system can be disabled by pressing the rear parking assist button located near the sound system.

The indicator light will come on when the system is turned off and you shift into **R** (Reverse).

If you disable the system, the **PARKING ASSIST OFF** message will appear in the driver information center display.

See "Driver Information Center Messages" earlier in this section for more information.

When the engine is turned off and back on, the system is automatically re-enabled.

### *Problems with the Parking Assist System*

If a temporary condition exists that prevents the system from turning on automatically, the red light in the rear display will come on when you shift to **R** (Reverse).

The following message will appear in the Driver Information Center display:

- **PARKING ASSIST OFF**

This message may appear under the following conditions:

- The system is disabled manually.
- The system sensors or the rear bumper are damaged.
- A bicycle or other object is attached to the rear of the vehicle.
- An object is hanging out of the liftgate.
- A tow bar is attached to the vehicle.
- A trailer hitch or a trailer hitch with a trailer is attached to the vehicle.
- The system receives vibrations from a large nearby vehicle or from heavy equipment such as a jackhammer.

The red light will stay on and the message will remain in the Driver Information Center display until conditions are back to normal.

If you try to enable the system using the rear parking assist button when the system has been automatically disabled, the indicator light on the button will flash for three seconds and then remain on.

If the message does not turn off when conditions are back to normal, the vehicle must be driven forward at a minimum speed of 25 km/h (15 mph).

Otherwise, if the red light stays on and the message is still displayed, there may be a problem with the system. The sensors may need to be cleaned.

If, after cleaning the rear bumper and sensors and driving forward at a minimum speed of 25 km/h (15 mph), the red light is still on and the message still appears, see your dealer for service.

See the following under "Driver Information Center" earlier in this section for more information:

- Driver Information Center Messages
  - **SERVICE PARKING ASSIST**

## ■ ELECTRIC POWER MANAGEMENT

This system monitors the temperature and charge status of the vehicle's battery and automatically adjusts the voltage to enhance performance and extend battery life.

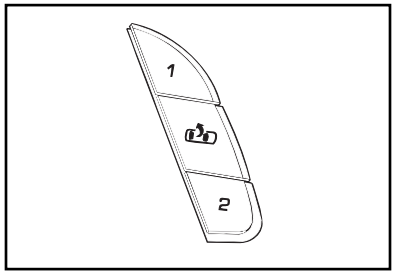
In vehicles that are equipped with a voltmeter gage or voltage display, you may see the reading fluctuate. This is normal.

If the system senses a problem, a message will appear on the Driver Information Center display.

The Charging System Light may also appear on the instrument cluster.

See the following, earlier in this section, for more information:

- Charging System Light
- Driver Information Center Messages




## ■ MEMORY FEATURE

This feature allows two different drivers (driver number **1** or driver number **2**) to store and recall their own driver's seat positions (including recliner and lumbar adjustment), outside mirror positions, steering wheel and adjustable pedal positions.

The controls are located on the driver's door panel.

To program the memory settings:

1. Adjust the driver's seat, outside mirrors, steering wheel and adjustable pedals to your desired settings.
2. Press and hold the appropriate driver memory button (**1** or **2**) until you hear two beeps indicating the settings have been saved.

Now, when your transmission is in **P** (Park) and you press one of the memory buttons, **1** or **2**, you will hear a beep and the memory settings will be recalled.

Memory recall can be stopped by pressing any of the following:

- power seat controls
- power mirror controls
- memory buttons **1** or **2**
- adjustable pedal switch
- power tilt wheel switch

You can use the Driver Information Center to program the memory feature to adjust to your chosen settings when you press the unlock button on the Remote Keyless Entry transmitter.

See the following under "Driver Information Center" earlier in this section for more information:

- Feature Customization

  **- MEMORY SEAT RECALL**

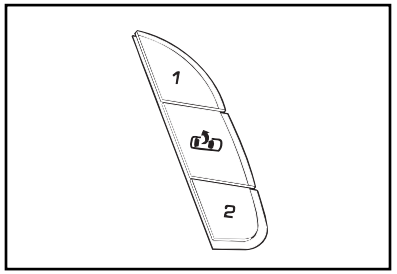
Note:

Some mirrors may not be compatible with the memory feature.

### Resetting the Memory Feature

If anything obstructs the seat or adjustable pedals while they are moving to their stored memory positions, the seat and pedals may stop working.

You may have to reset the memory feature.




To reset the memory feature, do the following:

1. Remove the obstruction.
2. Press and hold the control for the feature that is not responding for two seconds.

   For example, if the adjustable pedals are not moving to their programmed memory position, press and hold the adjustable pedal switch for two seconds.
3. Press the appropriate driver memory button (**1** or **2**).

   If the memory position is not recalled, your vehicle needs service.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 162 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



**Exiting the vehicle:**

To make it easy to get in and out of the vehicle, you can use the exit button.

When you press the exit button with the transmission in **P** (Park), the seat and/or steering column will move to the exit position.

You will hear one beep.

You can use the Driver Information Center to program the memory feature to adjust to your chosen exit position when you remove your key from the ignition.

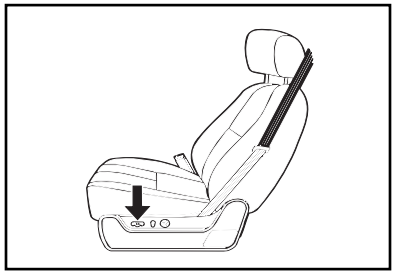
See the following under "Driver Information Center" earlier in this section for more information:

- Feature Customization
  - **EASY EXIT SETUP**
  - **EASY EXIT SEAT**

AKENG44_Escalade Page 163 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM

# Section **2 - Seats and Restraints**

**Seat Controls** ..... 164
Power Seat Controls ..... 164
Heated Front Seats ..... 166
Heated and Cooled Front Seats ..... 167
Heated Second Row Seats ..... 168
Head Restraints ..... 169
Second Row Seats ..... 170
Third Row Seat ..... 179
**Safety Belts** ..... 184
Lap/Shoulder Belt ..... 186
Safety Belt Extension ..... 191
Replacing Safety Belts ..... 191
Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy ..... 192
Safety Belt Reminder Light ..... 193
Passenger Safety Belt Reminder Light ..... 193
**Supplemental Restraints** ..... 194
Safety Belt Pretensioners ..... 194
Air Bag System ..... 194
Passenger Sensing System ..... 201
Child Restraints ..... 208
Anchors for Child Restraints with Lower Attaching Points and Top Strap ..... 217



## ■ SEAT CONTROLS

### *Power Seat Controls*

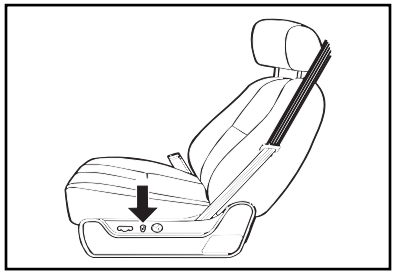
The power seat controls are located on the outboard sides of the front seats.

The front part of the switch makes the front of the seat go up and down.

The rear part of the switch makes the rear of the seat go up or down.

Move the entire switch up or down to make the whole seat move up or down.

Move the switch forward or back to move the seat forward or rearward.



**FRONT SEATBACK POWER RECLINING CONTROL**

Push the top of the switch forward or rearward to adjust the angle of the seatback.

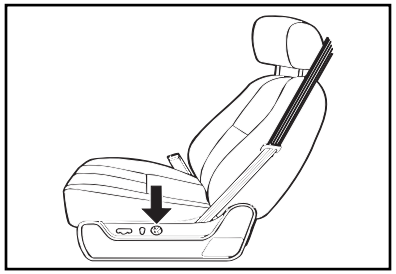
Do not have a seatback reclined while the vehicle is moving.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Sitting in a reclined position when your vehicle is in motion can be dangerous. Even if you buckle up, your seatbelts can't do their job when the seatback is excessively reclined.

For proper protection when the vehicle is in motion, have the seatback in the upright position.

Then, sit well back in the seat and wear your safety belt properly.



**POWER LUMBAR CONTROL**

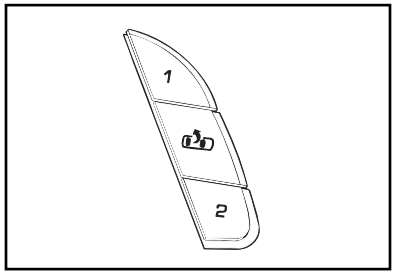
The switches are located on the outboard sides of the front seats.

To adjust the lumbar support, hold the switch forward to inflate or rearward to deflate the pillow.

Press and hold the top of the control to raise the height of the lumbar support.

To lower the height of the lumbar support, press and hold the bottom of the control.

Release the switch when the lower seatback reaches the desired position.

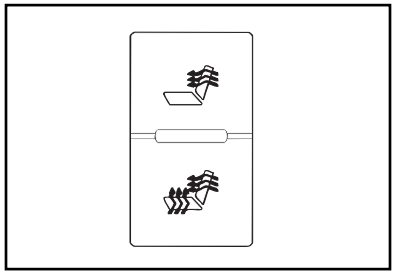



**MEMORY SEAT, MIRRORS, STEERING COLUMN AND ADJUSTABLE PEDALS**

This feature allows two different drivers (driver number **1** or driver number **2**) to store and recall their own driver's seat positions (including recliner and lumbar adjustment), outside mirror positions, steering wheel and adjustable pedal positions.

The controls are located on the driver’s door panel.

See "Memory Feature" in Section 1 for more information.



## *Heated Front Seats*

The engine must be running in order for the heated seat feature to work.

The control buttons for the heated front seats are on the climate control panel.

- Press if you would like the system to heat only the seatback.

  A symbol will appear on the display when this feature is turned on.

- Press if you would like the system to heat the seat and the seatback.

  A symbol will appear on the display when this feature is turned on.

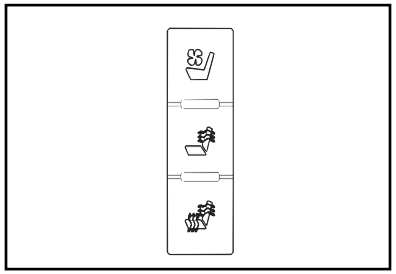
Press the button repeatedly to switch between the high, medium and low heat settings.

Indicator bar(s) located next to the heated seat symbol will illuminate to show the selected temperature setting.

- 3 lights (high heat)
- 2 lights (medium heat)
- 1 light (low heat)

Press the button again to turn it off.

The heated seat feature will turn off automatically 10 seconds after the ignition is turned off.



## *Heated and Cooled Front Seats (If equipped)*

Your vehicle may be equipped with the optional heated and cooled front seats.

The control buttons for the heated and cooled seats are on the climate control panel.

**Cooled Seats**

Press to turn the cooled seat feature on and off, and to switch between the high, medium and low settings.

A symbol will appear on the display when this feature is turned on.

An indicator light will glow to show the selected setting.

- 3 lights (high)
- 2 lights (medium)
- 1 light (low)

Press the button again to turn it off.

This feature will turn off automatically when the vehicle is turned off.

**Heated Seats**

- Press if you would like the system to heat only the seatback.

  A symbol will appear on the display when this feature is turned on.
- Press if you would like the system to heat the seat and the seatback.

  A symbol will appear on the display when this feature is turned on.

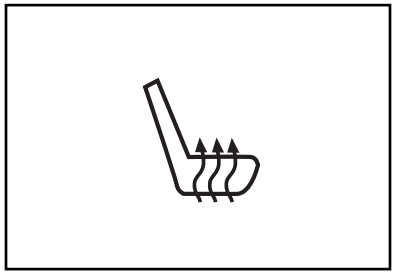
Press the button repeatedly to switch between the high, medium and low heat settings.

An indicator light will glow to show the selected setting.

- 3 lights (high heat)
- 2 lights (medium heat)
- 1 light (low heat)

Press the button again to turn it off.

This feature will turn off automatically when the vehicle is turned off.



### *Heated Second Row Seats*

The controls are integrated into the Rear Seat Audio system's control panel.

Press to turn the heated seat feature on and off, and to switch between the high, medium and low heat settings.

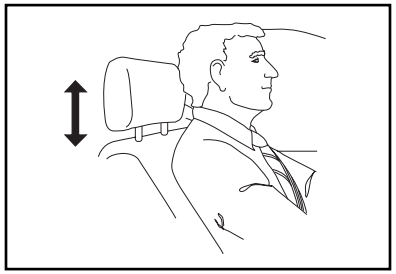
A symbol will appear on the display when this feature is turned on.

Indicator bar(s) located next to the heated seat symbol will illuminate to show the selected temperature setting.

- 3 lights (high heat)
- 2 lights (medium heat)
- 1 light (low heat)

Press the button again to turn it off.

The heated seat feature will turn off automatically 10 seconds after the ignition is turned off.

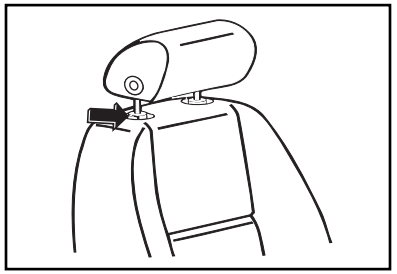


### *Head Restraints*

The front head restraints are adjustable.

Pull the head restraint up to raise it.

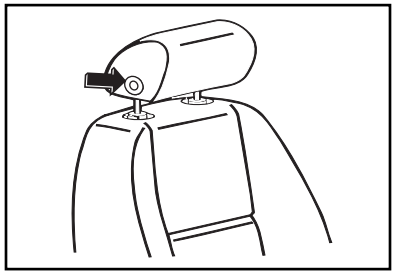
The top of the restraint should be closest to the top of your head.



The head restraints lock into place when raised. To release or lower the restraint, press the button located at the top of the seatback.

Push the adjustable head restraints fully down.

Some head restraints also tilt forward and rearward.



Press the button located on the side of the restraint and tilt the head restraint forward or backward.

After adjusting a head restraint, push up and down on the restraint to make sure it is locked in place.

**⚠ CAUTION**

If a head restraint is not installed on the seatback, adjusted properly or stored in the vehicle properly, it could cause serious head and neck injuries during a collision.

Make sure the head restraint is installed on the seatback and properly adjusted before driving.

**Removing Third Row Head Restraints**

You must remove the head restraints before tumbling the third row seat.

Remove the head restraint by pushing the button on the side of each head restraint guide and pulling it up and out from the seatback.

Store the head restraints in the stowage guides located on the seat.

## *Second Row Seats*

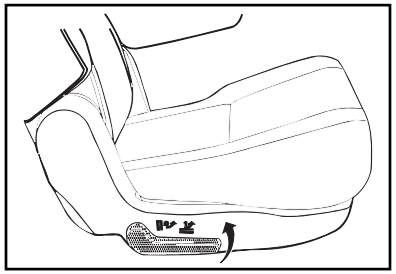
Your vehicle is equipped with either a second row split bench seat or second row bucket seats.

Your vehicle has a rear seat feature which lets you fold the seat down for more cargo space.

The seats can also be tumbled forward for easier access to the third row seat.

See the following, later in this section, for more information:

- Easy Entry Seat



**MANUAL RECLINING CONTROL (BUCKET SEATS ONLY)**

To recline the seatback, lean forward to remove your weight from the seatback and pull the lever all the way up. Then, lean back and push against the seatback to position it as desired. Release the lever to lock the seatback in place.

To bring the seatback to an upright position, lift the lever and do not rest against the back of the seat.

Push and pull on the seatback to check that it is locked into place.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

If the seatback isn't locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. You or others may be injured. Always press rearward on the seatback to be sure it is locked in place.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Sitting in a reclined position when your vehicle is in motion can be dangerous. Even if you buckle up, your safety belts can't do their job when the seatback is excessively reclined.

For proper protection when the vehicle is in motion, have the seatback in the upright position.

Then, sit well back in the seat and wear your safety belt properly.

# Seats and Restraints

## FOLDING SECOND ROW SEATS

Second row seats can be folded down for additional cargo space.

Before folding the seat, always make sure that there is nothing under or in front of the seat.

### Manual Fold and Tumble Seat (If equipped)

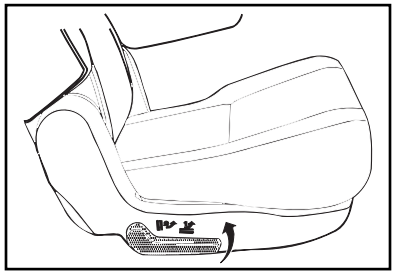
If equipped with this feature, the seat release controls are located on the outboard side of the seat.

1. Clear all items off the seat.

**NOTICE**

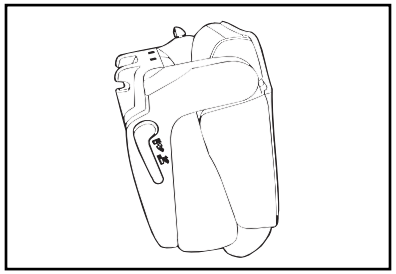
Damage to the rear seat or safety belts can occur if the seat is folded with the safety belts fastened.

Before folding a seat, unbuckle the safety belts and return them to their normal stowed positions.

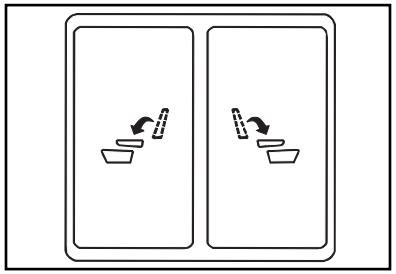


2. Lift the lever and fold the seatback forward.

   You may need to move the front seat forward or raise the front seatback to the upright position in order for the seatback to fold down flat.



3. Lift the lever again to release the rear of the seat from the floor, and tumble the seat forward.



**Power Fold and Tumble Seat (If equipped)**

If equipped with this feature, the seat release controls are located on the overhead console.

The release button only works when the transmission is in **P** (Park).

1. Clear all items off the seat.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Do not press the seat release button while a person is in the seat.

Serious personal injury or vehicle damage can result.

***NOTICE***

Damage to the rear seat or safety belts can occur if the seat is folded with the safety belts fastened.

Before folding a seat, unbuckle the safety belts and return them to their normal stowed positions.

2. Press the button once to fold the seatback down.

   After a brief delay, the seat will tumble forward.

**Unfolding the Seat**

To unfold the rear seat, pull the seat unit down until it locks into place.

The seatback cannot be raised to the upright position unless the seat is secured to the floor.

To raise the seatback, lift it up and push it until it locks into place.

Push and pull on the seatback to check that it is locked into place.

**⚠ CAUTION**

If the seatback isn't locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. You or others may be injured. Always press rearward on the seatback to be sure it is locked in place.

Check to be sure that the safety belts are properly routed and are not twisted.

**⚠ CAUTION**

A safety belt that is twisted or improperly attached or routed won't provide the protection needed in a crash. After raising a rear seatback, always make sure that the safety belts are not twisted and that they are properly attached and routed.

**EASY ENTRY SEAT**

The second row seats in your vehicle can be folded forward. Use this feature for exiting and entering third row seats.

Before folding a seat, always make sure that there is nothing under or in front of the seat.

Clear all items off the seat.

**NOTICE**

Damage to the rear seat or safety belts can occur if the seat is folded with the safety belts fastened.

Before folding a seat, unbuckle the safety belts and return them to their normal stowed positions.

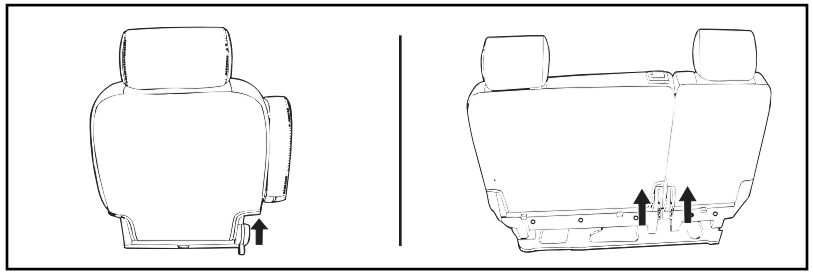
**Manual Easy Entry/Exit Seat (If equipped)**

To enter the third row seat:

- Fold and tumble the seat.

See the following, earlier in this section, for more information:

- Folding Second Row Seats
  - Manual Fold and Tumble Seat (If equipped)



To exit the third row seat:

1. Lift the lever and fold the seatback forward.

   The lever is located on back of the seat on the inboard side.
2. Lift the lever again to release the seat, and tumble the seat forward.
3. Return the seat to its original position.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Never allow passengers to use a third row seating position while the second row seat is folded forward.

People in the vehicle could be injured.

Make sure that the seat, when returned to its original position, is securely locked in place.

4. Push and pull on the seatback to check that it is locked into place.

**⚠ CAUTION**

If the seatback isn't locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. You or others may be injured. Always press rearward on the seatback to be sure it is locked in place.

5. Check to be sure that the safety belts are properly routed and are not twisted.

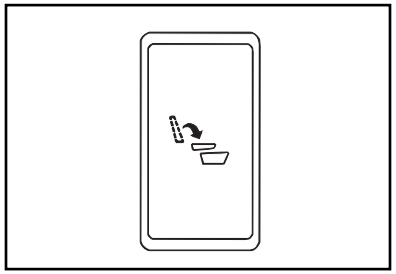
**⚠ CAUTION**

A safety belt that is twisted or improperly attached or routed won't provide the protection needed in a crash. After raising a rear seatback, always make sure that the safety belts are not twisted and that they are properly attached and routed.

**Power Easy Entry/Exit Seat (If equipped)**

To enter or exit the third row seat:

Press the seat release control, located on the panel behind the rear door, to fold and tumble the second row seat.



This feature works only when the vehicle is in **P** (Park).

1. Press the button once to fold the seatback down.

   After a brief delay, the seat will tumble forward.

***NOTICE***

Damage to the rear seat or safety belts can occur if the seat is folded with the safety belts fastened.

Before folding a seat, unbuckle the safety belts and return them to their normal stowed positions.

2. Return the seat to its original position.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Never allow passengers to use a third row seating position while the second row seat is folded forward.

People in the vehicle could be injured.

Make sure that the seat, when returned to its original position, is securely locked in place.

3. Push and pull on the seatback to check that it is locked into place.

**⚠ CAUTION**

If the seatback isn't locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. You or others may be injured. Always press rearward on the seatback to be sure it is locked in place.

4. Check to be sure that the safety belts are properly routed and are not twisted.

**⚠ CAUTION**

A safety belt that is twisted or improperly attached or routed won't provide the protection needed in a crash. After raising a rear seatback, always make sure that the safety belts are not twisted and that they are properly attached and routed.

## *Third Row Seat*

Your vehicle is equipped with a third row seat.

The rear seatback can be folded down. The seat can also be folded forward or removed to provide extra storage space.

For easier access to the third row seat, see "Easy Entry/Exit Seat" under "Second Row Seats" earlier in this section.

### FOLDING THIRD ROW SEATBACKS

Before folding a seat, always make sure that there is nothing under or in front of the seat.

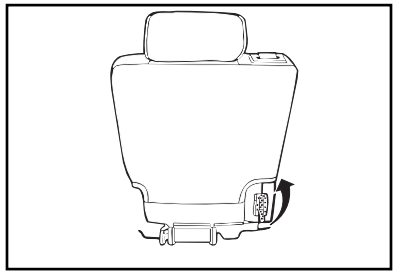
Clear all items off the seat.

1. Open the liftgate.

**NOTICE**

Damage to the rear seat or safety belts can occur if the seat is folded with the safety belts fastened.

Before folding a seat, unbuckle the safety belts and return them to their normal stowed positions.



2. Lift the lever on the bottom rear of the seatback on the outboard side.

   The seatback will fold forward.

### UNFOLDING THE SEATBACK

In order to return the seatback to the passenger position, open the liftgate.

To raise the seatback, lift it up and push it until it locks into place.

Push and pull on the seatback to check that it is locked into place.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

If the seatback isn't locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. You or others may be injured. Always press rearward on the seatback to be sure it is locked in place.

### TUMBLING THE THIRD ROW SEAT

Before folding a seat, always make sure that there is nothing under or in front of the seat.

Clear all items off the seat.

**NOTICE**

Damage to the rear seat or safety belts can occur if the seat is folded with the safety belts fastened.

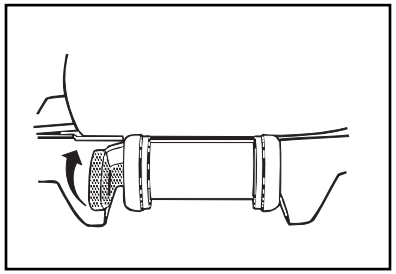
Before folding a seat, unbuckle the safety belts and return them to their normal stowed positions.

1. Open the liftgate.
2. Remove the head restraints.

   See "Head Restraints" earlier in this section for more information.
3. Lift the lever on the bottom rear of the seatback on the outboard side.

   The seatback will fold forward.

   The seat cannot be unlatched from the floor unless the seatback is folded.



4. From the rear of the vehicle, unlatch the rear of the seat from the floor by pulling up on the lever.

   The lever is located on the rear of the seat, next to the handle.
5. Lift the rear of the seat unit and fold it forward until it locks in the stowage position.
6. Push and pull on the seat to check that it is locked into place.
7. Store the head restraints in the stowage guides located on the seat.

**UNFOLDING THIRD ROW SEATS**

Before unfolding the seat, always make sure that nothing will be trapped under the seat.

To return the seat to its original position:

1. Open the liftgate.
2. Remove the head restraints from the stowage guides located on the seat.
3. From the rear of the vehicle, lift the lever located on the rear of the seat, next to the handle.
4. To unfold the rear seat, pull the seat unit down until it locks into place.
5. To raise the seatback, lift it up and push it until it locks into place.

   The seatback cannot be raised to the upright position unless the seat is secured to the floor.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

If the seatback isn't locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. You or others may be injured. Always press rearward on the seatback to be sure it is locked in place.

6. Push and pull on the seatback to check that it is locked into place.
7. Make sure the head restraint is installed on the seatback and properly adjusted before driving.

   See "Head Restraints" earlier in this section for more information.

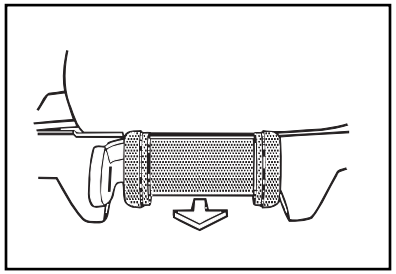
**REMOVABLE REAR SEAT**

**To remove the third row seat:**

1. Open the liftgate.
2. Lift the lever on the bottom rear of the seatback on the outboard side.

   The seatback will fold forward.

   The seat cannot be removed unless the seatback is folded.



3. To unlatch the seat from the floor, pull the handle, located at the rear of the seat, rearward.
4. Roll the seat out of the vehicle.

   There is a track in the floor to guide the seat wheels.

**To install the seat:**

1. Open the liftgate.
2. Slide the front outboard seat wheels into the track on the floor.
3. Roll the seat into position and lock it into place.

   The front latches should lock into place. If the latches do not lock, try tilting the rear of the seat upwards.
4. Push the rear of the seat down to lock the rear latches.

**⚠ CAUTION**

A seat that isn't locked into place properly can move around in a collision or sudden stop. People in the vehicle could be injured. Be sure to lock the seat into place properly when installing it.

5. Return the seatback to the upright position.

   The seatback cannot be raised to the upright position unless the seat is secured to the floor.

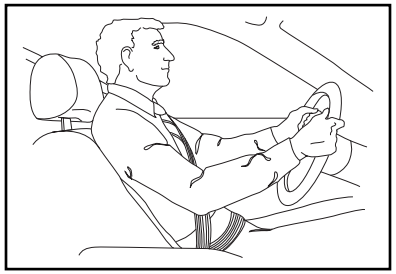
**⚠ CAUTION**

If the seatback isn't locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. You or others may be injured. Always press rearward on the seatback to be sure it is locked in place.

6. Make sure that the seatback, when returned to its original position, is securely locked in place.
7. Return the safety belts to their original positions so they will be available for the rear seat passengers to use.

**⚠ CAUTION**

A safety belt that is twisted or improperly attached or routed won't provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. After raising a rear seatback, always make sure that the safety belts are not twisted and that they are properly attached and routed.



## ■ SAFETY BELTS

**⚠ CAUTION**

Do not let anyone ride where they cannot wear a safety belt properly. If you are in a crash and you are not wearing a safety belt, you can be seriously injured or killed.

In a crash, a vehicle occupant who is not restrained properly could become airborne and strike and injure another person in the vehicle, or could be ejected from the vehicle.

**⚠ CAUTION *(Continued)***

In the same crash, you might not be injured if you are buckled up. Always fasten your safety belt, and check that your passengers' belts are fastened properly, too.

**⚠ CAUTION**

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly.

**⚠ *CAUTION (Continued)***

Do not allow anyone to ride in any area of the vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts.

The safety belt information included here is intended for vehicle occupants of adult size and for older children who have outgrown booster seats.

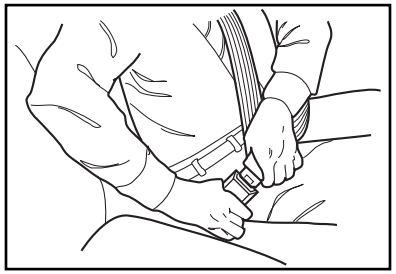
Older children who have outgrown booster seats should sit in a rear seat, restrained by a properly fastened safety belt.

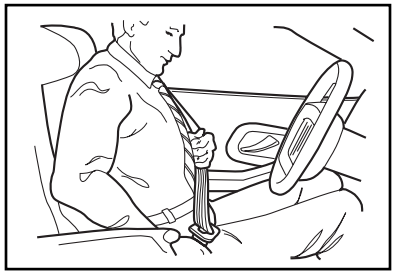
To determine whether a child is ready to transition out of a booster, into a rear seat, see "Older Children" under "Child Restraints" later in this section.

Be sure that if children are too small to be well restrained by the safety belt system, that they are secured in an appropriate child restraint. See "Child Restraints" later in this section.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

A safety belt must be used by only one person at a time. Do not allow two children to share the same belt.





### *Lap/Shoulder Belt*

All seating positions are equipped with lap/shoulder belts.

The lap/shoulder belt should be worn properly, as described below.

To fasten the belt:

1. Adjust the seat and sit up straight.
2. Pick up the latch plate.
3. Pull the belt across you. Do not let it get twisted.

   The shoulder belt may lock if you pull it out very quickly. To unlock it, let the belt go back slightly then pull it across you more slowly.
4. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks. Make sure the release button on the buckle faces upward or outward.

   Pull up on the latch plate to make sure it is secure.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

You could be seriously injured if your belt is buckled in the wrong place. Always buckle your belt into the buckle nearest you.

Be sure the belt goes under the armrests (if equipped).

If the safety belt goes over an armrest (if equipped), the lap portion of the safety belt could apply force to the abdomen in a crash, not to the much stronger pelvic bones.

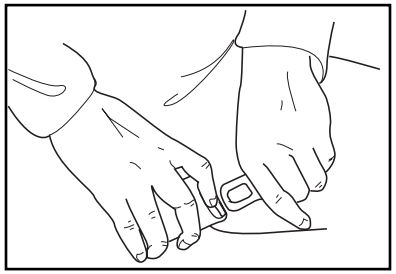
5. If your seating position is equipped with a shoulder belt height adjuster, adjust the shoulder belt height.

   See "Shoulder Belt Height Adjuster" later in this section.

6. Pull on the shoulder section to adjust the lap fit.

   For smaller occupants, you may need to pull the stitching on the lap belt through the latch plate to fully tighten the belt.

The shoulder belt locks if there is a sudden stop or crash.

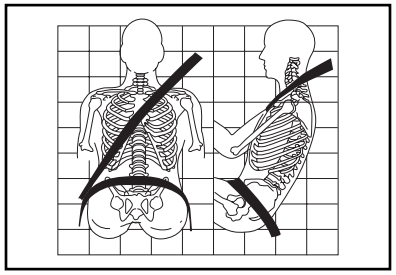


To unlatch the belt:

- Push the button on the buckle.

***NOTICE***

Before you close the door, make sure the safety belt is out of the way. Otherwise, the belt and/or the vehicle body could be damaged.



The lap/shoulder belt should be worn as shown above.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Wear your belt fitted closely against the body. Do not wear your shoulder belt under your arm or behind your back.

Make sure the belt is not twisted across your body, and never secure a safety belt over an armrest (if equipped).

When using a safety belt, sit up straight and keep your feet on the floor in front of you.

The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces.

The shoulder belt should not cross the face or neck.

The lap part of the belt should be worn low and snug on the hips, just touching the thighs. In a crash, this applies force to the strong pelvic bones, and you would be less likely to slide under the lap belt. If you slid under it, the belt would apply force to your abdomen. This could cause serious or even fatal injuries.

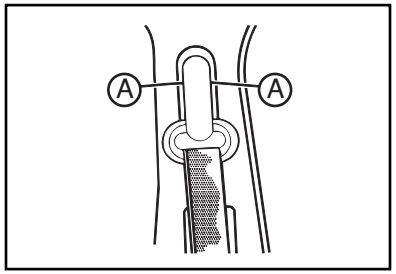
### Shoulder Belt Height Adjuster

**⚠ CAUTION**

Maladjustment of the safety belt height could reduce the effectiveness of the safety belt in a crash.

Your vehicle is equipped with shoulder belt height adjusters.

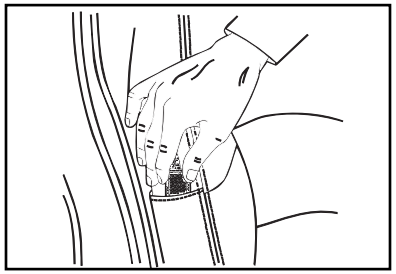
This adjusts the height of the front shoulder belt. You should adjust it so the belt is centered on your shoulder and away from your face and neck.




To move the height adjuster down, squeeze the release buttons Ⓐ and slide the adjuster down to the proper height.

To move the height adjuster up, just push up on the shoulder belt guide.

To make sure it is locked in place, try to move the height adjuster down without squeezing the release buttons.

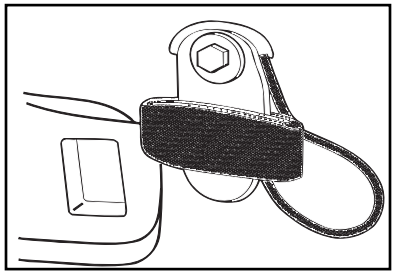


### Shoulder Belt Comfort Guides

Your vehicle is equipped with rear shoulder belt guides which provide comfort and support for some adults and children who have outgrown booster seats. These guides work by pulling the regular belt away from the neck and head.

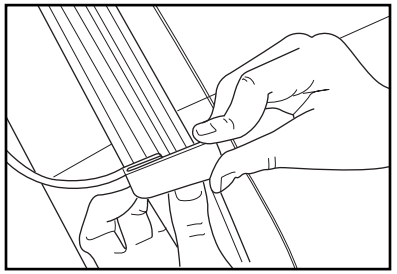
There is one guide for each of the rear outside passenger positions.

## Seats and Restraints

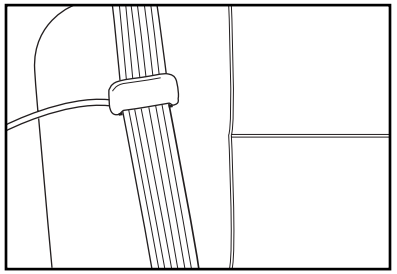


To install the comfort guide:

1. Remove the guide from its storage clip on the interior body or from its storage pocket on the side of the seatback.



2. Place the guide over the belt, inserting the belt edges into the slots of the guide.



3. Be sure the belt is not twisted and that the elastic cord is under the belt and the guide is on top.
4. Buckle, position and release the safety belt as you would normally.

   For more information on using lap/shoulder belts, see "Lap/Shoulder Belt" earlier in this section.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 191 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



**⚠ CAUTION**

The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces.

Wearing a safety belt improperly could cause serious injury.

To remove the comfort guide:

1. Squeeze the belt edges together and remove the belt from the comfort guide.
2. Slide the comfort guide back onto its storage clip or into its storage pocket when not in use.

### *Safety Belt Extension*

If the safety belt is not long enough to fasten around you, your dealer will order you an extender. When you go in to order it, take the heaviest coat you will wear, so the extender will be long enough for you.

Use the extender only for the seat it is made to fit. Do not let someone else use the extender. To wear it, just attach it to the regular safety belt.

Follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Never use a belt extender when securing a child restraint.

### *Replacing Safety Belts*

**⚠ CAUTION**

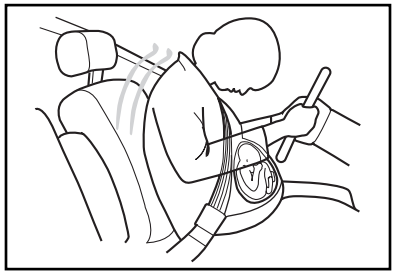
A crash can damage the restraint systems so that they do not provide proper protection. This could result in serious injury or even death in a collision. To help make sure your restraint systems are working properly after a crash, have them inspected and replaced, as necessary, as soon as possible.

If you have been in a collision where the belts may have been stretched, or if the safety belt is cut or damaged, the belt needs to be replaced. Repairs may be necessary even if the safety belt was not used at the time of the collision. Have the restraint system inspected after a collision.

Your vehicle is equipped with safety belt pretensioners for the driver and front passenger. Pretensioners work only once. If the pretensioners were activated in a collision, they will need to be replaced. If the air bag light stays on or comes on while you are driving, have the safety belt pretensioners checked. See "Safety Belt Pretensioners" under "Supplemental Restraints" later in this section for more information about this feature.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Safety procedures must always be observed when disposing of the vehicle or vehicle parts. Disposal should only be performed by an authorized service center, to help protect the environment and your health.



### *Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy*

Safety belts work for everyone, including pregnant women. Like all occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear safety belts.

A pregnant woman should wear a lap/shoulder belt, and the lap portion should be worn as low as possible throughout the pregnancy.

The best way to protect the fetus is to protect the mother. When a safety belt is worn properly, it is more likely that the fetus will not be hurt in a crash. For pregnant women, as for anyone, the key to making safety belts effective is wearing them properly.

### *Safety Belt Reminder Light*

The safety belt reminder light is located in the instrument cluster.

When you start your engine, a chime will come on for several seconds to remind you to fasten your safety belts. The safety belt light will also come on and stay on for several seconds, and then it will flash for several more seconds. If the driver's belt is buckled, neither the chime nor the light will come on.

The chime and light will repeat if the driver remains unbuckled and the vehicle is in motion.

### *Passenger Safety Belt Reminder Light*

The passenger safety belt reminder light is located on the overhead console.

If the passenger air bag is enabled when you start the vehicle, a chime will come on for several seconds to remind the front passenger to fasten their safety belt. The passenger safety belt reminder light will also come on and stay on for a few seconds, and then it will flash for several seconds more. If the passenger's belt is buckled, neither the chime nor the light will come on.

The chime and light will repeat if the passenger remains unbuckled and the vehicle is in motion.

The passenger safety belt warning light and chime may turn on if an object such as a brief-case or grocery bag is placed on the front passenger’s seat. Remove the object or buckle the safety belt to turn off the light and chime.

See "Passenger Sensing System" later in this section.

## ■ SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINTS

**⚠ *CAUTION***

A crash can damage the restraint systems in your vehicle. A damaged restraint system may not properly protect the person using it, resulting in serious injury or even death in a crash.

Have the restraint systems inspected after a collision.

Make any necessary replacements as soon as possible.

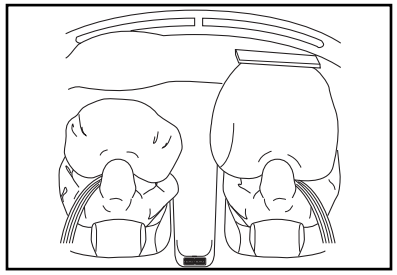
### *SAFETY BELT PRETENSIONERS*

Your vehicle is equipped with safety belt pretensioners. Pretensioners help tighten the safety belts during the early stages of a moderate to severe frontal, near frontal or rear collision if the threshold conditions for the pretensioners are met.

The pretensioners will also help tighten the safety belts during a side collision or rollover event.

The pretensioners are located in the driver and right front passenger safety belt assemblies.

Pretensioners work only once. If the pretensioners are activated in a collision, they will need to be replaced.



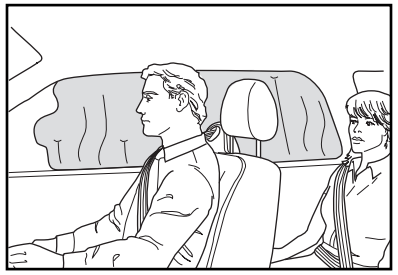
### *AIR BAG SYSTEM*

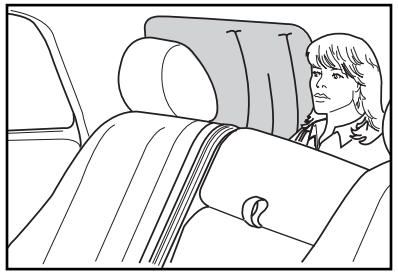
Your vehicle is equipped with two air bags that may inflate from the center of the steering wheel and from the right side of the instrument panel during a frontal collision.

These are dual-stage frontal air bags which adjust the amount of restraint according to crash severity. For moderate frontal impacts, the air bags inflate at a level less than full deployment. For more severe frontal impacts, full deployment occurs.

Vehicles equipped with dual-stage air bags have a seat position sensor for the driver's seat which aids in determining whether the driver's air bag should inflate at reduced or full deployment.

Vehicles equipped with dual-stage air bags also have electronic frontal sensors which help the system distinguish between a moderate and more severe frontal impact.





Your vehicle is also equipped with two roof-mounted side impact air bags that may inflate during a side collision, severe frontal impact or a vehicle rollover to protect the driver, the front passenger and the passengers directly behind them, including the passengers in the third row seat.

If battery power is available, the doors may automatically unlock and the interior lights will come on when an air bag inflates.

The hazard warning flashers will also turn on when an air bag inflates.

You can lock the doors, turn the interior lights off and turn the hazard warning flashers off by using the controls for those features.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Air bags are designed to be used with the safety belts.

In a crash, a vehicle occupant who is not restrained properly could become airborne and strike and injure another person in the vehicle, or could be ejected from the vehicle.

Everyone in your vehicle who has outgrown child restraints should wear a safety belt properly, whether or not there is an air bag for that person.

**⚠ CAUTION *(Continued)***

Both the safety belt restraint system and the air bag restraint system are designed to best protect adults.

Anyone who is up against, or very close to, an inflating air bag could be seriously injured or killed.

Be sure that if children are too small to be well restrained by the safety belt system, that they are secured in an appropriate child restraint. See "Child Restraints" later in this section.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

If you are too close to an inflating air bag, it could seriously injure you. Safety belts help keep you in position in case an air bag inflates in a collision. The driver should sit as far back as possible while still able to maintain control of the vehicle.

Accident statistics show that children are safer if they are properly restrained in a child restraint system secured in the rear seat.

It is therefore recommended that children in child restraints and older children who are large enough to wear a safety belt be secured in a rear seat position.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

A child in a rear-facing child restraint in the front passenger seating position could be seriously injured or killed if the passenger's air bag inflates. This is because the back of the restraint would be very close to the inflating air bag.

A child in a forward-facing child restraint in the front passenger seating position could be seriously injured or killed if the passenger's air bag inflates and the passenger seat is in a forward position.

If, however, you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the front passenger seat, be sure to move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Although your vehicle is equipped with a passenger air bag deactivation feature which is designed to turn off the passenger's air bag under certain conditions, no system is fail-safe. No one can guarantee that an air bag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though the system is deactivated.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 198 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



**⚠ CAUTION (Continued)**

It is therefore recommended that child restraints be secured in a rear seat position even if the front passenger's air bag is turned off.

In fact, because the risk to a rear-facing child is so great if the air bag deploys, there is a label on your vehicle's sun visor that cautions you never to put a rear-facing child seat in the front.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Frontal air bags are not designed to inflate at all in rollovers, rear collisions, or in many side crashes.

Roof-mounted rollover air bags are designed to inflate when either side of the vehicle is struck during a side collision, severe frontal impact or a vehicle rollover. They are not designed to inflate in a rear collision.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Do not attach anything to the area from where the air bag inflates.

If something is between an occupant and an air bag, the air bag might not inflate properly or it might force the object into the occupant, causing severe injury or even death.

The path of an inflating air bag must be kept clear of any objects at all times.

Changing or moving any parts of the front seats, safety belts, the air bag sensing and diagnostic module, steering wheel, instrument panel, roof-rail air bag modules, ceiling headliner or pillar garnish trim, overhead console, front sensors, side impact sensors, rollover sensor module, or air bag wiring can affect the operation of the air bag system.

Adding equipment to the front or sides of your vehicle may keep the air bags from working properly. Check with your dealer before adding equipment to the outside of your vehicle.

### ⚠ *CAUTION*

Do not secure anything to the roof of your vehicle by routing rope or tiedowns through any door or window opening. This will block the inflation path of a roof-mounted side impact air bag.

The path of an inflating air bag must be kept clear of any objects at all times.

Vehicle occupants should not lean or sleep against the doors or side windows.

### ⚠ *CAUTION*

When an air bag inflates, it leaves dust in the air. This dust could cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing trouble. To avoid this, everyone in the vehicle should get out as soon as it is safe to do so. If you are unable to get out of the vehicle, then open a window or door.

If you experience breathing problems following air bag deployment, you should seek medical attention.

In many severe crashes, windshields are broken by vehicle deformation. Additional windshield breakage may also occur from the inflation of the right front passenger air bag.

The air bag only inflates once. It must be replaced after a collision. Let only qualified technicians work on the air bag system.

Your vehicle has computer modules that may record information after a collision.

During a crash, your vehicle may record information about the condition of the vehicle and how it was operated.

See "Data Collection and Event Data Recorders" in Section 5 for more information.

Your vehicle is equipped with a rollover sensor that was designed to work with the original size and type of tires and wheels that came with your vehicle. Tires and wheels of different sizes and types may affect the operation of the roof-mounted rollover air bag system.

See "Tires" in Section 4 for more information.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

After an air bag inflates, the air bag components may be hot. Do not touch the air bag components.

***NOTICE***

Do not damage the air bag covers.

If you damage the covers, the air bag may not work properly.

If an air bag cover is damaged, you may have to replace the air bag module or both the module and the air bag cover.

Do not open or break the air bag coverings.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

For up to ten seconds after the ignition is turned off and the battery is disconnected, an air bag can still inflate during improper service.

If you are too close to an inflating air bag, it could seriously injure you.

Avoid yellow connectors.

Be sure that you or the person performing work is qualified and follows proper procedures.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Safety procedures must always be observed when disposing of the vehicle or vehicle parts. Disposal should only be performed by an authorized service center, to help protect the environment and your health.

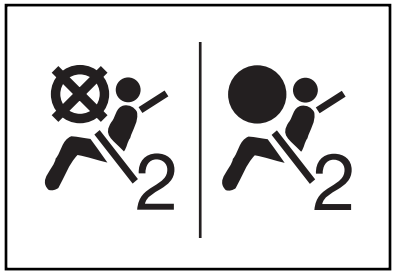
**AIR BAG LIGHT**

The air bag light on your instrument cluster flashes when you turn on the ignition to indicate that the restraint is in good working order.

See "Air Bag Light" in Section 1 for more information.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Have your vehicle serviced right away if the air bag light doesn't come on, or stays on, or comes on when you are driving.



## *PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM*

Your vehicle is equipped with the Passenger Sensing System.

The passenger sensing system turns off the right front passenger's frontal air bag under certain conditions.

NOTE:

The driver's frontal air bag and the roof-mounted side-impact air bags are not part of this system.

When you start the vehicle, the system will perform a self-check.

The air bag "on" and "off" indicators will appear briefly in the passenger sensing system status bar (located on the overhead console).

When the system self-check is complete, one of the indicators will stay on to indicate whether the right front passenger's frontal air bag is on or off.

Sensors in the right front passenger seat and safety belt detect the presence of an occupant to determine if the passenger's frontal air bag should be on or off.

The passenger sensing system will turn off the passenger frontal air bag under the following conditions:

- The right front passenger seat has no weight placed on it for a period of time or is unoccupied.
- The system detects an infant in a child restraint.

  It is important to note that for some children, including children in child restraints, and for very small adults, the system may or may not turn off the air bag, depending upon the person's seating posture and body build.

  Everyone in your vehicle who has outgrown child restraints should wear a safety belt properly, whether or not there is an air bag for that person.

The passenger air bag is also turned off if there is a critical problem with the frontal air bag system or with the passenger sensing system.

The "off" indicator will stay on if the right front passenger's air bag is deactivated.

When the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting in the right front passenger seat, the front passenger's air bag will be activated and the "on" indicator will appear in the passenger sensing system status bar.

See the following, later in this section, for more information:

- System Operation with a Child Restraint
- System Operation with Adult Passengers

Aftermarket equipment, such as seat covers, seat heaters and seat massagers can affect the performance of the passenger sensing system. Avoid using after-market equipment if your vehicle is equipped with this system.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Keep the area under the passenger seat or between the passenger seat cushion and seatback clear of objects to allow for the proper operation of the passenger sensing system.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

If the air bag light stays on or comes on while you are driving, there may be a problem with this system.

Have the vehicle serviced right away.

See "Air Bag Light" in Section 1 for more information.

### SYSTEM OPERATION WITH A CHILD RESTRAINT

Accident statistics show that children are safer if they are properly restrained in a child restraint system secured in the rear seat.

It is therefore recommended that children in child restraints and older children who are large enough to wear a safety belt be secured in a rear seat position.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

A child in a rear-facing child restraint in the front passenger seating position could be seriously injured or killed if the passenger's air bag inflates. This is because the back of the restraint would be very close to the inflating air bag.

A child in a forward-facing child restraint in the front passenger seating position could be seriously injured or killed if the passenger's air bag inflates and the passenger seat is in a forward position.

If, however, you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the front passenger seat, be sure to move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Although some vehicles are equipped with a passenger air bag deactivation feature which is designed to turn off the front passenger's frontal air bag under certain conditions, no system is fail-safe. No one can guarantee that an air bag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though the system is deactivated.

In fact, because the risk to a rear-facing child is so great if the air bag deploys, there is a label on your vehicle's sun visor that cautions you never to put a rear-facing child seat in the front.

**⚠ *CAUTION (Continued)***

It is therefore recommended that child restraints be secured in a rear seat position even if the front passenger's air bag is turned off.

When the vehicle is started with a child restraint installed in the front passenger seat, the "off" indicator should appear in the passenger sensing system status bar after the system has completed its self-check.

If a child restraint has been installed and the passenger sensing system has not deactivated the air bag, turn the vehicle off. Remove and then reinstall the child restraint.

Follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Note:

A thick layer of material (such as a blanket) or aftermarket equipment (such as seat covers, heaters or massagers) located between the seat cushion and the child restraint or small occupant can affect how the passenger sensing system operates. Remove any additional material from the seat cushion before reinstalling or securing the child restraint or small occupant.

If, after you restart the vehicle, the "on" indicator still appears, turn the engine off again.

Check that the vehicle's seatback is not pressing the child restraint into the seat cushion. If it is, slightly recline the vehicle's seatback and adjust the seat cushion if possible.

Also make sure that the child restraint is not trapped under the vehicle's head restraint. If this happens, adjust the head restraint.

Restart the engine.

**⚠ CAUTION**

If the "on" indicator still appears, secure the restraint in a rear seat position and have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible.

See "Child Restraints" later in this section.

**SYSTEM OPERATION WITH ADULT PASSENGERS**

When the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting in the right front passenger seat, the front passenger's air bags will be activated and the "on" indicator will appear in the passenger sensing system status bar.

In order for the system to correctly assess the status of the right front passenger's air bag, the passenger must sit properly in the seat.

To maintain the correct seating position, especially during vehicle maneuvers and braking, the passenger should wear the safety belt. Be sure the safety belt is adjusted properly at all times.

See "Safety Belts" earlier in this section for additional safety belt instructions and safety information.

If the passenger sensing system does not recognize that a person of adult size is sitting in the seat, turn the vehicle off.

A thick layer of material (such as a blanket) or aftermarket equipment (such as seat covers, heaters or massagers) can affect how the passenger sensing system operates. Remove any additional material from the seat.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 207 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM

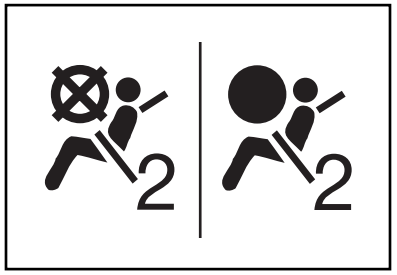


Move the seatback to the upright position.

Make sure the passenger sits in an upright position, centered on the seat cushion with his/her legs comfortably extended.

Restart the vehicle. This should allow the system to detect the person and enable the passenger's air bag.

It may take about two to three minutes for the system to detect the passenger and enable the passenger's air bag.



**PASSENGER AIR BAG ON/OFF INDICATOR**

When you start the vehicle, the system will perform a self-check.

The air bag "on" and "off" indicators will appear briefly in the passenger sensing system status bar (located on the overhead console).

When the system self-check is complete, one of the indicators will stay on to indicate whether the right front passenger's frontal air bag is on or off.

If the two indicators never appear when the vehicle is first started, or if after several seconds both indicators remain lit, there may be a problem with the system. See your dealer for service.

The "on" indicator light may illuminate if an object, such as a briefcase, handbag, or grocery bag, is put on the front passenger's seat. Remove the object to turn off the indicator light.

**⚠ CAUTION**

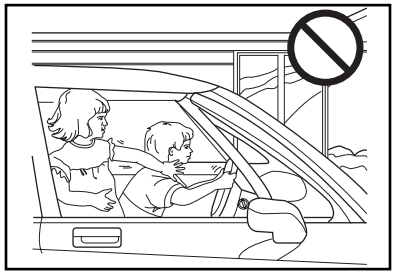
If the air bag light stays on or comes on while you are driving, there may be a problem with this system.

Have the vehicle serviced right away.

See "Air Bag Light" in Section 1 for more information.

See "System Operation with a Child Restraint" earlier in this section for additional important safety information.

Also, see "Passenger Safety Belt Reminder Light", earlier in this section.



## CHILD RESTRAINTS

**⚠ CAUTION**

Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle.

Children left unattended could play with the safety belts. The belt could become wrapped around the child's neck and continue to tighten. The child could be injured or killed.

**⚠ CAUTION (Continued)**

Never allow children to play with the safety belts.

Secure any unused safety belts behind the child restraint so children cannot reach them.

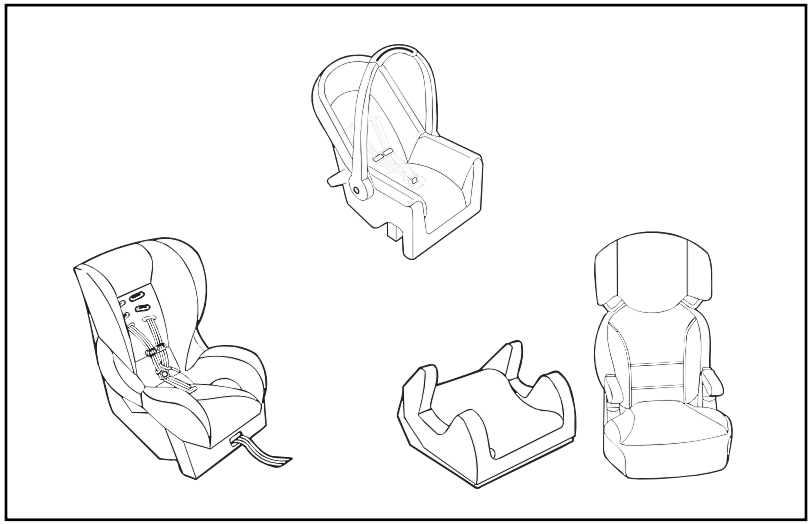
**⚠ CAUTION**

Never hold a baby in your arms while riding in a vehicle. During a crash a baby will become so heavy you can't hold it. For example, in a crash at only 40 km/h (25 mph), a 5.5 kg (12 lbs) baby will suddenly become a 110 kg (240 lbs) force on your arms. The baby would be almost impossible to hold. Secure the baby in an infant restraint.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

An unsecured child restraint may be tossed about the vehicle in a collision or sudden stop. You or your passengers could be injured. Secure the child restraint properly even if a child is not using the restraint.

For most types of child restraints, there are several different models available.



When choosing a child restraint, take into consideration not only the child's weight, size and age, but also whether the restraint will be compatible with your vehicle.

The restraint manufacturer's instructions should state the weight and height limitations for the particular restraint.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Infants need complete support, including support for the head and neck. In a crash, an infant in a rear-facing child seat settles into the restraint, so the crash forces can be distributed across the strongest parts of an infant's body, the back and shoulders.

Infants should always be secured in appropriate infant restraints.

**⚠ CAUTION**

A young child's hip bones are still so small that the vehicle's regular safety belt may not remain low on the hip bones, as it should. Instead, it may settle up around the child's abdomen. In a crash, the belt would apply force on a body area that is unprotected by any bony structure. This alone could cause serious or fatal injuries.

To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries, young children should always be secured in appropriate child restraints.

**⚠ CAUTION**

A child can be seriously injured or killed in a crash if the child is not properly secured in the child restraint. Follow the instructions that come with the restraint.

These restraints use the safety belt system or anchoring system in your vehicle, but the child also has to be secured within the restraint to help reduce the chance of personal injury. Follow the instructions that come with the restraint.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

If a child restraint is not properly secured in the vehicle, the restraint will not be able to protect a child sitting there. In a crash, the child could be seriously injured or killed.

Before installing a child restraint in the front passenger position, remove any additional material from the seat such as blankets, cushions, seat covers, seat heaters or seat massagers.

See "Passenger Sensing System" earlier in this section for more information.

Route the belt through the restraint and buckle the belt. Then, feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor while pushing down on the restraint.

Follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Push and pull the child restraint in different directions to make sure it is secure.

If your vehicle is equipped with child restraint anchors and the restraint that you need to secure is equipped with anchor attaching points, see "Anchors for Child Restraints with Lower Attaching Points and Top Strap" later in this section for information on securing the restraint.

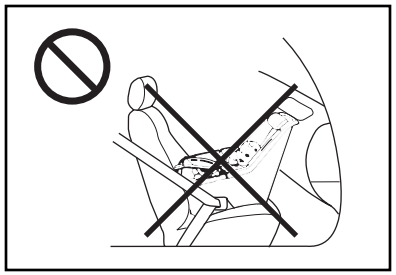
Child restraints that require the top strap to be anchored can only be used in rear seating positions. There are no anchor brackets available for front seating positions.

Also, do not use a child restraint that requires the top strap to be anchored in the third row passenger's side seating position. There are no anchor brackets available for this seating position.

See "Top Strap" later in this section.

Accident statistics show that children are safer if they are properly restrained in a child restraint system secured in the rear seat.

It is therefore recommended that children in child restraints and older children who are large enough to wear a safety belt be secured in a rear seat position.



**⚠ CAUTION**

A child in a rear-facing child restraint in the front passenger seating position could be seriously injured or killed if the passenger's air bag inflates. This is because the back of the restraint would be very close to the inflating air bag.

**⚠ CAUTION *(Continued)***

A child in a forward-facing child restraint in the front passenger seating position could be seriously injured or killed if the passenger's air bag inflates and the passenger seat is in a forward position.

If, however, you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the front passenger seat, be sure to move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Although some vehicles are equipped with a passenger air bag deactivation feature which is designed to turn off the passenger's frontal air bag under certain conditions, no system is fail-safe. No one can guarantee that an air bag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though the system is deactivated.

In fact, because the risk to a rear-facing child is so great if the air bag deploys, there is a label on your vehicle's sun visor that cautions you never to put a rear-facing child seat in the front.

It is therefore recommended that child restraints be secured in a rear seat position even if the front passenger's air bag is turned off.

### ⚠ *CAUTION*

When the vehicle is started with a child restraint installed in the front passenger seat, the "off" indicator should appear in the passenger sensing system status bar (located on the overhead console) after the system has completed its self-check.

If the "on" indicator appears when you have installed a child restraint in the right front passenger seat, it means that the front passenger's air bag system is still active.

See "Passenger Sensing System" earlier in this section.

Use the following charts to determine which seats in the vehicle are suitable for the carriage of child restraint systems.

| Mass Group | Seating Position | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Front Passenger | Second Row Outboard | Second Row Center | Third Row Outboard | Third Row Center |
| 0<br>up to 10 kg<br>(0-9 months) | X | * | * | † | X |
| 0+<br>up to13 kg<br>(0-24 months) | X | * | * | † | X |
| I<br>9-18 kg<br>(9-48 months) | X | * | * | † | X |
| II & III<br>15-36 kg<br>(4-12 years) | X | * | * | † | X |

*: Suitable for "universal" category restraints approved for use in this mass group.

†: Suitable for forward-facing "universal" category restraints approved for use in this mass group.

X: Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group.

# Seats and Restraints

| Mass Group | Size Class | Fixture | Vehicle ISOFIX Positions | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Front Passenger | Second Row Left Side Outboard (2*) | Second Row Center (1*) | Second Row Right Side Outboard (1*) (2*) | Third Row Left/Right Side Outboard and Center |
| Infant Carbed (Carrycot) | F | ISO/L1 | X | X | X | X | X |
| | G | ISO/L2 | X | X | X | X | X |
| 0 (up to 10 kg) | E | ISO/R1 | X | † | † | † | X |
| 0+ (up to 13 kg) | E | ISO/R1 | X | † | † | † | X |
| | D | ISO/R2 | X | † | † | † | X |
| | C | ISO/R3 | X | † | † | † | X |
| I (9 to 18 kg) | D | ISO/R2 | X | † | † | † | X |
| | C | ISO/R3 | X | † | † | † | X |
| | B | ISO/F2 | X | † | † | † | X |
| | B1 | ISO/F2X | X | † | † | † | X |
| | A | ISO/F3 | X | † | † | † | X |
| II (15 to 25 kg) | | | X | † | † | † | X |
| III (22 to 36 kg) | | | X | † | † | † | X |

1*: Second row split bench seat - ISOFIX anchors located on the right outboard and center seating positions.

2*: Second row bucket seats - ISOFIX anchors located on the left and right outboard seating positions.

†: Suitable for ISOFIX "universal" category forward-facing restraints approved for use in this mass group.

X: Seat position not suitable for ISOFIX restraints in this mass group and/or size class.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 215 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



**OLDER CHILDREN**

Older children who have outgrown booster seats should sit in a rear seat, restrained by a properly fastened safety belt.

The child restraint manufacturer's instructions should state the weight and height limitations for the particular restraint.

To determine whether a child is ready to transition out of a booster, into a rear seat, check your local laws and check the following:

- Have the child sit all the way back on the seat. Do the child's knees bend at the seat edge?

  If you answered "yes" to this question, proceed to the next question.

  If you answered "no" to this question, the child should continue to use a booster seat.

- With the child sitting all the way back on the seat, with knees bent at the seat edge, buckle the safety belt around the child.

  Does the shoulder belt rest on the shoulder?

  If you answered "yes" to this question, proceed to the next question.

  If you answered "no" to this question, try to use the rear shoulder belt comfort guide.

  See "Shoulder Belt Comfort Guides" earlier in this section.

  If the shoulder belt still does not rest on the shoulder, the child should continue to use a booster seat.

- Does the lap belt fit low and snug on the hips, touching the thighs?

  If you answered "yes" to this question, proceed to the next question.

  If you answered "no" to this question, the child should continue to use a booster seat.
- Can the proper safety belt fit be maintained for the duration of the trip?

  If you answered "no" to this question, the child should continue to use a booster seat.

  If you answered "yes" to this question, an older child should wear a lap/shoulder belt and get the additional restraint a shoulder belt can provide.

The shoulder belt should not cross the face or neck.

The lap part of the belt should be worn low and snug on the hips, just touching the thighs. In a crash, this applies force to the strong pelvic bones.

Otherwise, in a crash, the belt would apply force to the child's abdomen. This could cause serious or even fatal injuries.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

In a crash, a vehicle occupant who is not restrained properly could become airborne and strike and injure another person in the vehicle, or could be ejected from the vehicle.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

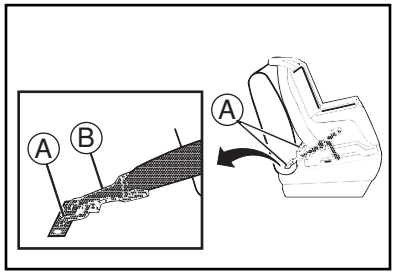
A safety belt must be used by only one person at a time. Do not allow two children to share the same belt.

See "Safety Belts" earlier in this section for additional safety belt instructions and safety information.

### *Anchors for Child Restraints with Lower Attaching Points and Top Strap*

This system is designed to make installation of child restraints easier.

Use this system instead of the vehicle's safety belts to secure a child restraint.




With this feature you will have anchors Ⓐ for the second row outboard bucket seats or the right and center passenger positions of the split bench seat.

The anchors are located where the seatback meets the seat cushion.

There are no lower anchors for the third row seat.

To use the system, you need either a forward-facing child restraint that has attaching points Ⓑ at its base (and possibly a top strap), or a rear-facing child restraint that has attaching points Ⓑ at its base.

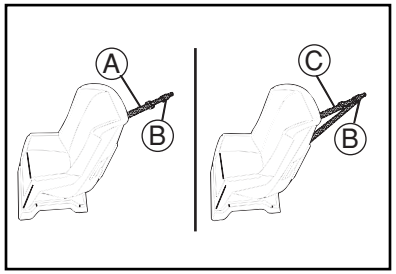
**⚠ *CAUTION***

If a child restraint is not attached to its anchorage points, the restraint will not be able to protect a child sitting there. In a crash, the child could be seriously injured or killed.

Make sure that the child restraint is properly installed using the anchorage points, or use the vehicle's safety belts to secure the restraint. Follow the instructions that come with the restraint.

See "Child Restraints" earlier in this section.

Also, see "Securing a Child Restraint with Lower Attaching Points and Top Strap" later in this section.




**TOP STRAP**

A child restraint may have a single Ⓐ or a dual Ⓒ top strap. A single attachment Ⓑ at the end of the top strap connects the child restraint to the top strap anchor in your vehicle.

If your child restraint requires that the top strap be anchored, do not use the restraint unless it is anchored properly.

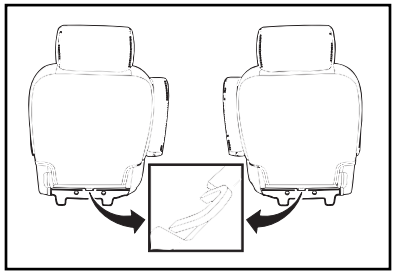
**⚠ *CAUTION***

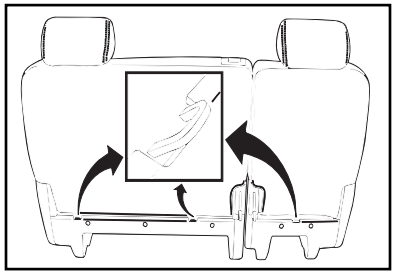
Do not install a child restraint using only the top strap anchor.

Make sure that the child restraint is properly installed using the anchorage points, or use the vehicle's safety belts to secure the restraint. Follow the instructions that come with the restraint.

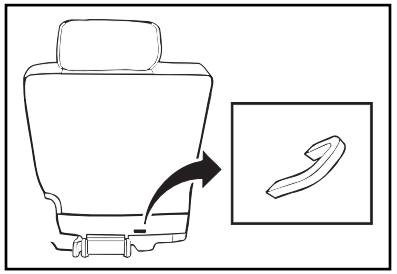
See "Child Restraints" earlier in this section.

Child restraints that require the top strap to be anchored can only be used in rear seating positions. There are no anchor brackets available for front seating positions.





The top strap anchor brackets are located at the rear of the seat cushion for each seating position in the second row.



There is also a top strap anchor bracket at the rear of the seat cushion for the third row seat which can be used to anchor a child restraint in either the left rear seating position or in the center seating position.

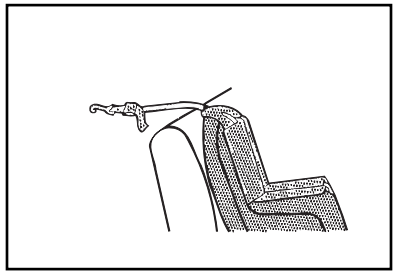
**⚠ CAUTION**

Each bracket is designed to anchor only one child restraint. Attaching more than one child restraint to a single bracket could cause the anchor to come loose or even break during a collision. A child or others may be injured. To prevent injury to people and damage to the vehicle, attach only one child restraint per bracket.

Only attach one top strap to each anchor bracket.

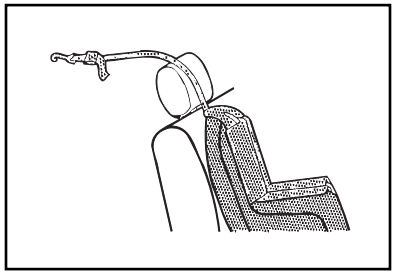
Also, do not use a child restraint that requires the top strap to be anchored in the third row passenger's side seating position. There are no anchor brackets available for this seating position.

Be sure to use an anchor point located on the same side of the vehicle as the seating position where the child restraint will be placed.

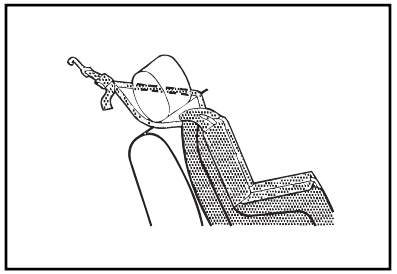


For a forward-facing child restraint, attach the top strap to the top strap anchor.

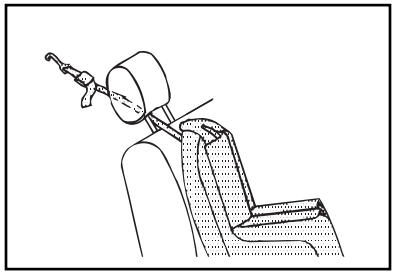
- If the seat does not have a head restraint or a head rest, route the top strap directly over the seatback.



- If the seat has a fixed, non-removable head restraint or head rest and the child restraint has a single top strap, route the top strap over the head restraint or head rest.



- If the seat has a fixed, non-removable head restraint or head rest and the child restraint has a dual top strap, route the top straps around the head restraint or head rest.



- For the third row seat, raise the head restraint or head rest and route the top strap over the seatback between the head restraint or head rest posts.

  Then lower the head restraint.

  See "Head Restraints" earlier in this section for more information.

Consult the manufacturer's instructions for the child restraint to determine when and how to tighten the top strap.

### SECURING A CHILD RESTRAINT WITH LOWER ATTACHING POINTS AND TOP STRAP

**⚠ CAUTION**

Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle.

Children left unattended could play with the safety belts. The belt could become wrapped around the child's neck and continue to tighten. The child could be injured or killed.

Never allow children to play with the safety belts.

Secure any unused safety belts behind the child restraint so children cannot reach them.

**NOTICE**

Contact between the child restraint's lower attachment parts and the vehicle's safety belt assembly may result in damage.

If necessary, move the fastened safety belt so that the belt assembly and the lower attachment parts do not rub together.

**NOTICE**

Folding an empty rear seat with the safety belts secured may cause damage to the safety belt or the seat.

Always remember to return the safety belts to their normal, stowed position before folding the rear seat.

To secure a child restraint designed for this system, use the following procedure:

1. Locate the anchors where the seatback meets the back of the seat cushion.
2. Place the child restraint on the seat.
3. Attach the child restraint's attachment points to the anchors in the vehicle, and tighten as necessary. Follow the instructions that come with the restraint.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Each top strap anchor or set of attaching points is designed to hold only one child restraint. Attaching more than one child restraint to a single anchor or attaching point could cause the anchor or attaching point to come loose or even break during a collision. A child or others may be injured. To prevent injury to people and damage to the vehicle, attach only one child restraint per anchor or attaching point.

4. For a forward-facing child restraint, attach the top strap to the top strap anchor.

   See "Top Strap" earlier in this section.

   Consult the manufacturer's instructions to determine when and how to tighten the top strap.
5. Push and pull the child restraint in different directions to make sure it is secure.

To remove the child restraint, unhook the top strap (if equipped) from the top strap anchor and then disconnect the anchor points.

Unbuckle the safety belts and return them to their normal position.

If you have been in a collision, the anchoring system may have been damaged. Repairs may be necessary even if the anchoring system was not used at the time of the collision. Have the anchoring and restraint systems inspected after a collision.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 224 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM

AKENG44_Escalade Page 225 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



**New Vehicle Break-In Period**....227
**Keys**....227
PASS-Key® III Plus Electronic Immobilizer System....228
**Theft Deterrent System**....230
**Remote Keyless Entry**....232
Operation....232
Transmitter Range....234
Battery Replacement....235
Matching Transmitters....236
**Ignition Switch**....236
Retained Accessory Power....238
**Starting Instructions**....239
Engine Starting....239
Computer Controlled Cranking System....240
Engine Starting Problems....240
**Adjustable Accelerator and Brake Pedals**....242
**Engine Block Heater**....242
**Transmission**....243
Automatic Transmission....243
**All-Wheel Drive**....250
**Driving Guidelines For All-Wheel Drive Vehicles**....250
Off-Road Driving....251
Before You Go Off-Roading....253
Loading Your Vehicle for Off-Road Driving....253
Environmental Concerns....254
Traveling to Remote Areas....255
Getting Familiar with Off-Road Driving....255
Driving Off-Road....255
Driving on Hills....256
Approaching a Hill....257
Driving Uphill....258
Driving Downhill....259
Driving Across an Incline....259
Driving in Mud, Sand, Snow or Ice....261
Driving in Water....262
**Vehicle Parking**....262
Shifting Into P (Park)....263
Shifting Out of P (Park)....263
Torque Lock....264
Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist....264
Rear Vision Camera....265

# Section **3 - Starting and Operating Instructions**

**Traction**.....265
Stabilitrak® System .....265
Locking Rear Axle .....266
**Steering** .....266
Power Steering .....266
**Brakes** .....266
Disc Brake Wear Indicators.....267
Brake Adjustment.....268
Brake Pedal Travel.....268
Adjustable Brake Pedal .....268
Antilock Brake System .....268
Dynamic Rear Proportioning.....268
Parking Brake.....269
Brake Assist .....270
**Suspension**.....270
Automatic Level Control .....270
Magnetic Ride Control.....271
Road Sensing Suspension.....271
**Vehicle Loading**.....272
Tire and Loading Information Label .....273
Certification Label.....273
**Trailer Towing** .....274
Tow/Haul Mode .....278
Hitches .....279
Safety Chains.....281
Trailer Brakes .....281
Trailer Turn Signals .....281
Parking on Hills.....282
Wiring Harness .....283
Maintenance When Trailer Towing .....284
**Recreational Vehicle Towing**.....285

## ■ NEW VEHICLE BREAK-IN PERIOD

**NOTICE**

Your vehicle doesn't need an elaborate "break-in", however it will perform better in the long run if you follow these guidelines:

- Keep your speed at 90 km/h (55 mph) or less for the first 800 km (500 miles).
- Don't drive at a constant speed - fast or slow - for the first 800 km (500 miles). Don't make full-throttle starts.

**NOTICE (Continued)**

- Avoid downshifting to brake or slow the vehicle.
- Avoid making hard stops for the first 320 km (200 miles) or so. Hard stops with new brake linings can mean premature wear. Follow this "break-in" guideline every time you get new brake linings.
- Do not tow a trailer during "break-in".

Following break-in, engine speed and load can be gradually increased.

## ■ KEYS

**⚠ CAUTION**

Do not leave children in the vehicle with the ignition key. They could operate the power windows or other controls and could even make the vehicle move. A child or others could be injured or even killed.

Children can be seriously injured or killed if caught in the path of a closing window.

Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle.

The vehicle comes with two identical double-sided keys which are used for the ignition and all the locks.

If you lose your keys, contact your dealer to obtain new ones.

Any new key must be programmed before it will start your vehicle.

See the following, later in this section, for more information:

- PASS-Key® III Plus System

**NOTICE**

Theft prevention features can make it difficult to get into your vehicle if you lock your key inside. You may even have to damage your vehicle to open a door. Be sure you have an extra key.

## *PASS-Key® III Plus Electronic Immobilizer System*

Your vehicle is equipped with a Personalised Automotive Security System, **PASS-Key®III Plus**. The ignition key has a transponder embedded in it. The transponder uses a radio frequency that matches a decoder in your vehicle.

The system is armed when the key is removed from the ignition. Take care not to damage the key, or it may not start the engine.

The system will automatically disarm when the ignition is turned in **ACC** (accessory), **ON** or **START**.

In order to discourage vehicle theft, the system will not allow the starter and fuel circuits to operate if a damaged or wrong key has been used in an attempt to start the vehicle.

If a damaged or wrong key has been used, the system will not allow the engine to start. If the engine does not start and the Security System Light comes on, there may be a problem with this system.

A text message may also appear in the Driver Information Center display.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 229 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



See the following under "Driver Information Center Messages" in Section 1 for more information:

- **SERVICE THEFT DETERRENT SYSTEM**

Turn the ignition off and try again.

If the engine still does not start and the key appears to be undamaged, try another ignition key. You may also want to check the fuse. See "Fuses and Circuit Breakers" for more information. If the engine still does not start, have the vehicle serviced. If the engine does start, the first key may be faulty. See your dealer to have a new key made.

Do not leave the key or the device that disarms the theft deterrent system in the vehicle.

Modifications made to this system by anyone other than an authorized service facility may void authorization to use the system.

**PROGRAMMING ADDITIONAL KEYS**

Any new key must be programmed before it will start your vehicle.

Additional keys can be obtained from an authorized dealer.

The replacement key must have a transponder embedded in it.

You can program up to ten additional keys with the two original keys present. To program an additional key:

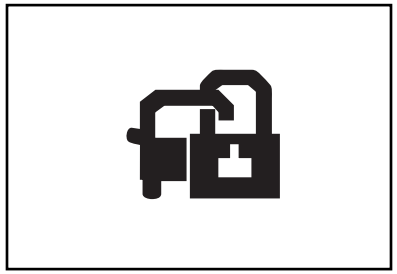
1. Verify that the new key has ⊙ stamped on it.
2. Start the engine using the previously programmed master key.

   If the engine does not start, see your dealer for service.
3. Repeat the previous step using the other master key.
4. Turn off the ignition and remove the key.
5. Within five seconds, insert the key that you are programming and turn it to **ON**.

   Once the key is programmed, the Security System Light will turn off.

   The key may be programmed so quickly that you may not even realize that the Security System Light had turned on.
6. If additional keys are to be programmed, repeat the previous steps.

If all of your ignition keys are lost or damaged, see your dealer or a locksmith who can service Pass-Key® III Plus systems to make and program a new key.



## ■ THEFT DETERRENT SYSTEM

Your vehicle is equipped with a Theft Deterrent System.

To arm the system:

1. Open the door.
2. Lock the vehicle with the remote keyless entry system or the power door lock switch.

   The security system light will begin flashing to indicate that the theft deterrent system is arming.

3. Close all doors.

   The Security System Light will turn off after about 30 seconds.

When the light turns off, the system is armed.

The system will not arm if you lock the doors with a key or the manual lock lever.

To disarm the system, unlock the vehicle using the Remote Keyless Entry system. If a door, the liftgate or the hood is opened in any other way, the alarm will go off.

First, a pre-alarm will sound for 10 seconds. The horn will chirp and the lights will flash. Then the full alarm will sound.

The horn will sound and the headlights will flash for up to two minutes.

The alarm will then turn off to preserve battery power.

To avoid triggering the alarm, you must unlock a door with the Keyless Entry system.

If the alarm is set off by accident, you can shut it off by pressing the unlock button on the remote keyless entry transmitter or by starting the vehicle.

To test the system, lock the doors using the remote keyless entry transmitter from inside the vehicle. Wait for the Security System Light to turn off. Then, unlock the door using the manual lock lever. Open the door.

The pre-alarm should sound.

Wait ten seconds for the full alarm to activate.

To turn the alarm off, press the unlock button on the keyless entry transmitter or start the engine.

If the horn does not work, the horn fuse may be blown.

If the problem is fuse-related, see "Fuses and Circuit Breakers" in Section 4 for additional information.

If the alarm still does not sound or the headlights do not flash, see your dealer for service.

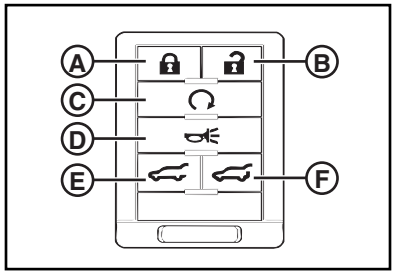
Note: The power door lock switch will not work to unlock the vehicle when the theft deterrent system is armed.

## ■ REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY

Modifications made to this system by anyone other than an authorized service facility may void authorization to use the system.

This option allows you to lock or unlock your doors from up to 20 m (65 feet) away.

The keyless entry transmitter also allows you to activate a vehicle locator, or to sound the vehicle's alarm from a distance.




### *Operation*

Your vehicle comes with two transmitters.

The number on each remote keyless entry transmitter corresponds to driver 1 or driver 2.

The transmitter supplied with your vehicle may vary depending on the particular options included in your vehicle.

Different feedback options may be chosen for keyless entry buttons. For more information, see "Driver Information Center" in Section 1.

**Lock**

Press Ⓐ to lock all doors.

Pressing the lock button on the keyless entry transmitter also arms the theft deterrent system. See "Theft Deterrent System" earlier in this section for information.

**Unlock**

Press Ⓑ to unlock the driver's door.

Press the button twice within three seconds to unlock all the doors.

This feature turns the interior lights on and keeps them on for up to 20 seconds while you are entering the vehicle, or until the ignition is turned on.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 233 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



Pressing the unlock button on the keyless entry transmitter also disarms the theft deterrent system. See "Theft Deterrent System" earlier in this section for information.

Note:

Button Ⓒ is not operable on your vehicle.

**Vehicle Locator/Panic Alarm**

Press and release Ⓓ to locate your vehicle.

The horn will chirp three times and the turn signal lights will flash three times.

When the ignition is off, press and hold Ⓓ for 3 seconds to activate an alarm.

The horn will sound and the turn signal lights will flash.

To turn the alarm off, press the button again or turn on the ignition.

**Power Liftgate**

Press and hold Ⓔ to open and close the power liftgate.

The taillights will flash and a chime will sound while the liftgate is opening and closing.

If the rear wiper is active when you press the power liftgate button, the rear wiper will move to the "parked" position as the liftgate opens.

The rear wiper will return to normal operation once the liftgate is closed.

If the power liftgate presses against an obstruction while it is opening or closing, the liftgate automatically reverses direction.

See "Obstruction Detection Feature" under "Power Liftgate" in Section 1.

**Remote Liftglass Release**

Press and hold Ⓕ to open the liftglass.

If the rear wiper is active when you press Ⓕ, the rear wiper will move to the "parked" position and the liftglass will release.

## *Transmitter Range*

At times you may notice a decrease in the range. This is normal. If the transmitter does not work, or you have to stand closer to your vehicle than normal for the transmitter to work:

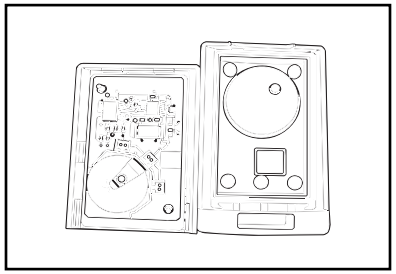
- You may be too far from your vehicle. Check your distance. You may have to stand closer to your vehicle in rain or snow.
- Check the location. Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal. Take a few steps to the right or left.
- You may have to replace the battery in your transmitter. See the instructions for battery replacement.

If none of the above apply, see your dealer or a qualified technician for service.

### *Battery Replacement*

If **REPLACE BATTERY IN REMOTE KEY** appears in the Driver Information Center display, you should replace the battery in the keyless entry transmitter.

See "Driver Information Center Messages" in Section 1 for more information.



**To replace the battery:**

1. Insert a thin, flat non-metal object to separate the bottom of the transmitter from the top.
2. Use a pencil or a similar non-metal object to remove the old battery.
3. Put the new battery in positive (+) side up. Use battery type CR2032.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in accordance with environmental protection regulations to help protect the environment and your health.

4. Snap the top and bottom together.
5. Test the operation of the transmitter with your vehicle.

***NOTICE***

When replacing the battery, use care not to touch any of the circuitry. Static from your body transferred to these surfaces may damage the transmitter.

### *Matching Transmitters*

Matching transmitters to your vehicle may be necessary if you lose or replace a transmitter. Even if only one transmitter is being replaced, you must rematch all of your transmitters at the same time. Up to eight transmitters can be matched to your vehicle.

See your dealer to purchase a new transmitter and to have transmitters matched to your vehicle.

You can match a new transmitter to your vehicle using the Driver Information Center.

See the following under "Driver Information Center" in Section 1 for more information:

- Vehicle Information Menu
  - **PRESS ✓ TO RELEARN REMOTE KEY**

### *Transmitter Frequency Approval Code*

Following is the European Remote Frequency Certification code for this system:

- CE 0123 ⓘ

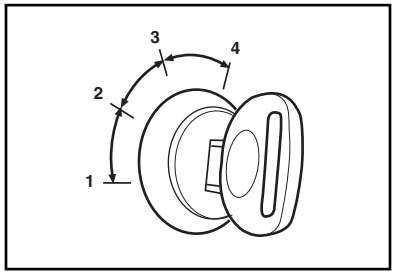
## ■ IGNITION SWITCH

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Do not leave children in the vehicle with the ignition key. They could operate the power windows or other controls and could even make the vehicle move. A child or others could be injured or even killed.

Children can be seriously injured or killed if caught in the path of a closing window.

Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle.




With the key in the ignition switch, you can turn the switch to four positions:

1. **LOCK**: The only position in which you can remove the key. This locks your ignition and transmission.

   The transmission must be in **P** (Park) to turn the ignition switch to **LOCK**.

If the driver's door is opened while the key is in the ignition, a chime will sound to remind you to remove the key from the ignition.

If the vehicle is parked with the wheels off center, the steering can bind.

If this happens, move the steering wheel from right to left and turn the ignition to **ACC** (accessory). If the steering wheel movement is still restricted, your vehicle needs service.

**NOTICE**

If your key seems stuck, be sure the key is the correct key and that it is in all the way. Turn the key only with your hand. Don't use a tool to force the key. If this does not work, then take the vehicle in for service.

2. **ACC** (Accessory): In this position, you can operate your electrical accessories while the engine is off.

   Use this position if you must have your vehicle in motion while the engine is off (for example, if your vehicle is being pushed).

**NOTICE**

Operating features such as the radio with the key in the "accessory" or "on" positions for extended periods may drain the battery and prevent the vehicle from starting. Do not operate the vehicle in the "accessory" or "on" positions for a long period of time.

3. **ON**: The switch returns to the **ON** position after you start the engine and release the switch. Even with the engine off, you can use **ON** to operate electrical accessories and display some instrument cluster warning lights and messages.

   The automatic transmission is unlocked in this position.

4. **START**: Starts the engine. When the engine starts, release the key. The ignition switch will return to **ON**.

### *Retained Accessory Power*

Your vehicle has retained accessory power, which allows you to operate the following electrical accessories for up to 10 minutes after you turn the ignition off, unless a door is opened:

- Power Windows
- Sunroof (if equipped)

You can operate the radio for up to 10 minutes after the ignition has been turned off or until the driver's door is opened.

If you want this power for another 10 minutes, close all the doors and turn the ignition to **ON** and then back to **LOCK**.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 239 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



## ■ STARTING INSTRUCTIONS

**NOTICE**

Your engine is designed to work with the electronics in your vehicle. If you add electrical parts or accessories, you could change the way the engine operates. See your dealer before adding electrical equipment.

Any resulting damage would not be covered by your warranty.

### *Engine Starting*

Make sure the parking brake is applied before starting the engine.

To start, the gear selector must be in **P** (Park) or **N** (Neutral).

Use **N** (Neutral) to restart when the vehicle is already moving.

**NOTICE**

Do not shift into **P** (Park) while the vehicle is moving.

Otherwise, the transmission could be damaged.

Turn your ignition key to **START**. Do not push the accelerator pedal. Let go of the key when the engine starts. The idle speed will go down as the engine gets warm.

If the engine does not start within 15 seconds, the system will stop cranking the engine to prevent starter motor gear damage.

Do not race the engine immediately after starting.

Allow enough time for the engine to warm up and deliver oil to the various parts of the engine requiring lubrication.

### *Computer Controlled Cranking System*

This feature helps start the engine and protects components. Once cranking is initiated, the engine will continue to crank for a few seconds or until the vehicle starts.

If the engine does not start within 15 seconds, the system will stop cranking the engine to prevent starter motor gear damage.

Turn the ignition to the **ACC** or **LOCK** position to stop cranking and turn the engine off.

### *Engine Starting Problems*

***NOTICE***

Holding your key in **START** immediately after cranking has ended can overheat and damage the starter motor and drain your battery.

Wait about 15 seconds between each try to help avoid draining your battery or damaging your starter.

**Failure to Start**

If the engine doesn't start within ten seconds, push your accelerator pedal all the way down and continue holding your key in **START** for up to five more seconds. When the engine starts, let go of the key and let up on the accelerator pedal. Wait about 15 seconds between each try to help avoid draining your battery or damaging your starter.

If the engine starts, let it warm up before you drive. Do not race the engine when it is cold.

Allow enough time for the engine to warm up and deliver oil to the various parts of the engine requiring lubrication.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 241 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



**Cold Weather Starting**

When starting the engine in very cold weather (below -18°C) (0°F), turn the ignition key to **START** and hold it there for up to 15 seconds. Let go of the key when the engine starts.

Wait about 15 seconds between each try to help avoid draining your battery or damaging your starter.

If the engine starts, let it warm up before you drive. Do not race the engine when it is cold.

Allow enough time for the engine to warm up and deliver oil to the various parts of the engine requiring lubrication.

**Engine Flooding**

If the engine doesn't start within ten seconds, the engine could be flooded with too much gasoline.

Push your accelerator pedal all the way down and continue holding your key in **START** for up to five more seconds.

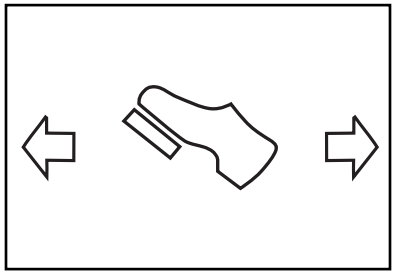
When the engine starts, let go of the key and the accelerator pedal.

If the engine starts briefly but then stops again, do the same thing. This clears the extra gasoline from the engine.

Wait about 15 seconds between each try to help avoid draining your battery or damaging your starter.

If the engine starts, let it warm up before you drive. Do not race the engine when it is cold.

Allow enough time for the engine to warm up and deliver oil to the various parts of the engine requiring lubrication.



## ■ ADJUSTABLE ACCELERATOR AND BRAKE PEDALS

The control is located on the instrument panel, below the climate control system.

Press the right arrow to move the pedals closer to you or press the left arrow to return the pedals toward the standard positions.

Before you begin driving, press the brake pedal to confirm that the pedal is adjusted to the correct position for you.

If you cannot reach the brake pedal or are unable to fully press the pedal, readjust the pedal position.

Only small adjustments should be made while driving.

For information on programming the adjustable pedal positions into memory, see "Memory Feature" in Section 1.

This feature will not operate under any of the following conditions:

- The transmission is in **R** (Reverse).
- Cruise control is active.

## ■ ENGINE BLOCK HEATER (IF EQUIPPED)

Use this option if you have to park in very cold weather, -18°C (0°F) or colder. You'll get easier starting and better fuel economy during engine warm-up.

Your vehicle may also have an internal thermostat in the plug end of the cord. This prevents operation of the engine block heater when the temperature is at or above -18°C (0°F).

The cord is located on the driver's side of the engine compartment, near the power steering reservoir.

To use the block heater:

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Unwrap the electrical cord and plug it in. It uses a normal, house voltage.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Plug the cord into a properly grounded outlet. You can use a heavy-duty extension cord (rated for at least 15 amps) connected to a properly grounded outlet.

Ask a dealer in the area how long you should keep the heater plugged in.

Be sure to unplug and restow the cord before starting the engine. Otherwise, it may be damaged by moving engine parts.

## ■ TRANSMISSION

### *Automatic Transmission*

**NOTICE**

Spinning the tires too fast or holding the vehicle in one place on a hill using only the accelerator pedal may damage the transmission.

Any resulting damage would not be covered by your warranty.

If the vehicle gets stuck do not spin the wheels too fast.

When stopped during an uphill climb, hold the vehicle in place using the brakes.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Do not shift out of **P** (Park) or **N** (Neutral) with the engine racing.

You could lose control of the vehicle and you or others may be injured.

Shifting into a drive gear while the engine is racing is dangerous. Keep your foot on the brake pedal and off the accelerator pedal. After shifting, wait a while, then release the brake pedal slowly. This will prevent any unexpected rapid acceleration.

**NOTICE**

Damage to your transmission caused by shifting out of **P** (Park) or **N** (Neutral) with the engine racing is not covered by your warranty.

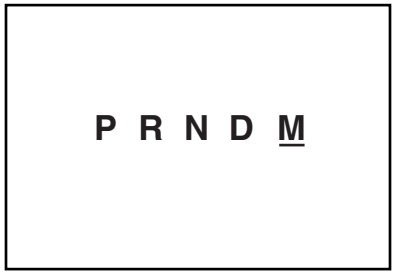
The transmission in your vehicle uses shift stabilization which adjusts transmission shifting to the current driving situation to reduce rapid upshifts and downshifts. In some cases, the shift stabilization feature will prevent upshifting to maintain the current vehicle speed which results in what seems to be a hanging shift. This is normal.

The transmission also uses adaptive shift controls. These controls compare key shift parameters to pre-programmed ideal shift conditions. The transmission customizes optimum settings for gear shifting and each shift may feel different. The transmission shift schedule is variable and adjusts to how the vehicle is being used, providing improved vehicle performance.

In cold weather, the transmission operates in warm-up mode until the engine reaches normal operating temperature.

While the transmission is in warm-up mode, upshifts may be delayed.

This is normal.




There are several different shift positions for your gear lever.

**P (Park)**

This locks your rear wheels. Use this position to park the vehicle and when starting the engine.

Apply the regular brakes fully before you shift out of **P** (Park).

See "Shift Lock Control System" later in this section for more information.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Avoid leaving your vehicle while the engine is running.

If you are not in an idling vehicle, the engine could overheat and even catch fire. You or others could be injured. Do not let the engine run when you are not in the vehicle.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

If you do not park your vehicle properly, it can roll. If you leave the engine running, it could move quickly. You or others could be injured. To be sure the vehicle does not move, follow the steps below.

- Set the parking brake and apply the regular brake pedal.
- Shift into **P** (Park).
- Turn off the ignition and remove the key.

See "Vehicle Parking" later in this section for more information.

**⚠ CAUTION**

When you leave your vehicle, be sure the shift lever is fully in **P** (Park) and the parking brake is firmly applied. Don't try to shift to **P** (Park) if your vehicle is moving.

**R (Reverse)**

Use this to back up.

At low vehicle speeds you can use **R** (Reverse) to rock your vehicle back and forth if your vehicle gets stuck in sand, mud, ice or snow. See "If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck" in Section 5.

**NOTICE**

Shift to **R** (Reverse) only after your vehicle is stopped. Shifting to Reverse while your vehicle is moving could damage your transmission.

The repairs would not be covered by your warranty.

**N (Neutral)**

In this position, the engine doesn't connect with the wheels. You can use **N** (Neutral) to restart a stalled engine while your vehicle is moving. Use **N** (Neutral) when your vehicle is being towed.

See "Recreational Vehicle Towing" later in this section for more information.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Do not shift out of **P** (Park) or **N** (Neutral) with the engine racing.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 247 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



**D (Drive)**

Use this position for normal driving in most street and highway situations. If you need more power and are:

- going less than about 55 km/h (35 mph), push your accelerator pedal about halfway down.
- going more than about 55 km/h (35 mph), push the accelerator all the way down.

This position can also be used when:

- driving on hilly, winding roads
- towing a trailer
- carrying a heavy load
- off-road driving

You may want to shift into a lower gear if the transmission shifts too often.

**M (Manual Mode)**

Use this position to manually select the gear range that best suits your current driving conditions.

See the following, later in this section, for more information:

- Automatic Transmission Manual Shift Mode

**AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION MANUAL SHIFT MODE**

To use this feature, do the following:

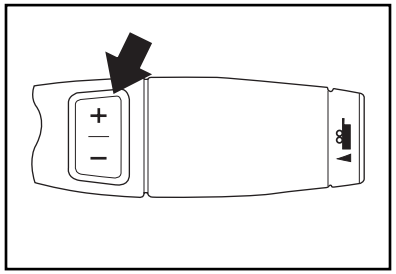
1. Move the shift lever to **M** (Manual Mode).

   Then, the Manual Mode display will appear in the driver information center.

   The display will show **MANUAL SHIFT** with the currently selected gear number below it.

   The displayed gear range represents a requested range of available gears. It does not indicate that the vehicle will operate only in that specific gear.

   The transmission's current gear range will be the highest attainable range, with all the lower gears available.



2. Press the plus or minus button to select a higher or lower gear range to best suit your current driving conditions.

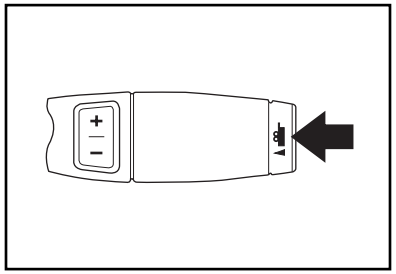
   This is helpful when you need to control the engine and vehicle speed while driving downhill.

   The Driver Information Center display will change to display the requested change in gear range.

To stop using the automatic transmission manual shift mode and return to fully automatic transmission operation, move the shift lever from **M** (Manual Mode) to **D** (Drive) to continue driving or **P** (Park) when the vehicle is stopped.

Grade Braking is not available when manual mode is active.

See "Tow/Haul Mode" under "Trailer Towing" for additional information.



**TOW/HAUL MODE BUTTON**

Your vehicle is equipped with the Tow/Haul feature. There is an on/off button located at the end of the gear shift lever.

Press and release the button to turn the tow/haul mode on or off.

The Tow/Haul Mode Light will be on when the system is on.

Use this feature to tow or haul a heavy load more efficiently. See "Tow/Haul Mode" under "Trailer Towing" later in this section.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 249 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



**GRADE BRAKING AND CRUISE GRADE BRAKING**

This feature is designed to assist you when driving on a downhill grade.

Grade braking maintains the vehicle's speed by automatically implementing a shift schedule that uses the engine and the transmission to slow the vehicle.

Grade braking reduces wear on the brake system and increases control of the vehicle.

The system constantly monitors the vehicle's speed, acceleration, engine torque, and brake pedal usage and detects when the vehicle is on a downhill grade.

To turn grade braking on or off, press and release the tow/haul button located at the end of the shift lever.

Pressing the button at the end of the lever turns grade braking and tow/haul mode on and off together. They cannot be activated or deactivated separately.

Grade braking also operates if cruise control is used while tow/haul mode is active.

Cruise grade braking monitors vehicle acceleration and deviation from the cruise set speed to determine the correct gear for the current driving conditions.

If the vehicle is accelerating on a downhill grade, cruise grade braking will automatically downshift to slow the vehicle.

If the vehicle speed is near or below the cruise set speed, cruise grade braking will automatically upshift the transmission to increase vehicle speed.

See "Cruise Control" in Section 1 for more information.

If the shift lever is moved to the **M** (Manual Mode) position, grade braking is automatically deactivated to allow the driver to select a desired gear.

See the following for more information:

- Automatic Transmission
- Trailer Towing
- Tow/Haul Mode

### SHIFT LOCK CONTROL SYSTEM

Your vehicle has an automatic transmission shift lock control system. With the engine running, you have to fully apply the regular brakes before you can shift out of **P** (Park).

See "Vehicle Parking" later in this section for more information.

## ■ ALL-WHEEL DRIVE

All-wheel drive transmits engine power to all four wheels. This is like four-wheel drive, but there is no separate lever or switch to engage or disengage the front axle. It is fully automatic, and adjusts itself as needed for road conditions.

## ■ DRIVING GUIDELINES FOR ALL-WHEEL DRIVE VEHICLES

Specific design characteristics give all-wheel drive vehicles a higher center of gravity than ordinary cars. An advantage of the higher ground clearance is a better view of the road allowing you to anticipate problems. They are not designed for cornering at the same speeds as conventional two-wheel-drive vehicles. If at all possible, avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers. As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover.

Many of the same design features that help make your vehicle responsive on paved roads during poor weather conditions (features like the locking rear axle and all-wheel drive) help make it much better suited for off-road use than a conventional passenger car. Its higher ground clearance also helps your vehicle step over some off-road obstacles.

But your vehicle does not have features like special underbody shielding and a transfer case low gear range, which are usually thought necessary for extended or severe off-road service.

The air bag system is designed to be used when you are driving off-road.

Always wear your safety belt. Be sure it is adjusted properly at all times.

This guide is for operating your vehicle off paved roads.

## *Off-Road Driving*

**NOTICE**

Do not operate your vehicle off-road if it is equipped with 22-inch tires unless you will be traveling on a level, solid surface.

Off-road driving can be great fun, but it does have some definite hazards. The greatest of these is the terrain itself.

"Off-roading" means you've left the great road system behind. Traffic lanes aren't marked. Curves aren't banked. There are no road signs. Surfaces can be slippery, rough, uphill or downhill.

If at all possible, avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers. As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover.

Off-road driving involves some new skills. And that's why it's very important that you read this guide. You'll find many driving tips and suggestions. These will help make your off-road driving safer and more enjoyable.

If you think you will need extra ground clearance at the front of the vehicle, you can easily remove the front bumper lower air dam.

The air dam is held in place by two bolts and 10 snaps located along the lower edge of the front bumper. The bolts and snaps are accessible from underneath the bumper.

To remove the lower air dam, do the following:

1. Remove the two bolts.
2. Insert the edge of a flat-head screwdriver into each snap and pull downward to disengage the snaps.
3. Once the bolts are removed and the snaps are released, push forward on the air dam assembly until the air dam is free.

Make sure to replace the air dam when you return to regular driving conditions.

To reinstall the lower air dam:

1. Line up each snap and push the air dam rearward to engage the snaps.
2. Install the two bolts.

***NOTICE***

Operating the vehicle for an extended period of time without the front bumper lower air dam can cause improper air flow to the engine. Things on the front of the vehicle such as fog lights or tow hooks may be damaged. Make sure to replace the air dam when you are finished off-road driving.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 253 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



### *Before You Go Off-Roading*

There are some things to do before you go out. Be sure to have all necessary maintenance and service work done. Check to make sure all underbody shields (if so equipped) are properly attached. Is there enough fuel? Is the spare tire fully inflated? Are the fluid levels up where they should be? What are the local laws that apply to off-roading where you'll be driving? If you don't know, you should check with law enforcement people in the area. Will you be on someone's private land? If so, be sure to get the necessary permission.

### *Loading Your Vehicle for Off-Road Driving*

There are some important things to remember about how to load your vehicle.

- The heaviest things should be on the load floor and forward of your rear axle. Put heavier items as far forward as you can.
- Be sure the load is secured properly, so driving on the off-road terrain doesn't toss things around.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

- Cargo on the load floor piled higher than the seatbacks can be thrown forward during a sudden stop. You or your passengers could be injured.
- Unsecured cargo on the load floor can be tossed about when driving over rough terrain. You or your passengers can be struck by flying objects. Secure the cargo properly.
- Heavy loads on the roof raise the vehicle's center of gravity, making it more likely to roll over. You can be seriously or fatally injured if the vehicle rolls over. Put heavy loads inside the cargo area, not on the roof. Keep cargo in the cargo area as far forward and low as possible.

You'll find other important information in this manual. See "Vehicle Loading", "Luggage Carrier" and "Tires".

### *Environmental Concerns*

Off-road driving can provide wholesome and satisfying recreation. However, it also raises environmental concerns. General Motors recognizes these concerns and urges every off-roader to follow these basic rules for protecting the environment.

- Always use established trails, roads and areas that have been specially set aside for public off-road recreational driving; obey all posted regulations.
- Avoid any driving practice that could damage the environment - shrubs, flowers, trees, grasses - or disturb wildlife (this includes wheel-spinning, breaking down trees or unnecessary driving through streams or over soft ground).
- Always carry a litter bag ... make sure all refuse is removed from any campsite before leaving.
- Take extreme care with open fires, camp stoves and lanterns.
- Never park your vehicle over dry grass or other combustible materials that could catch fire from the heat of the vehicle's exhaust system.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 255 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



### *Traveling to Remote Areas*

It makes sense to plan your trip, especially when going to a remote area. Know the terrain and plan your route. You are much less likely to get bad surprises. Get accurate maps of trails and terrain. Try to learn of any blocked or closed roads.

It's also a good idea to travel with at least one other vehicle. If something happens to one of them, the other can help quickly.

Does you vehicle have a winch? If so, be sure to read the winch instructions. In a remote area, a winch can be handy if you get stuck, however you'll want to know how to use it properly.

### *Getting Familiar with Off-Road Driving*

It's a good idea to practice in an area that's safe and close to home before you go into the wilderness. Off-road driving does require some new and different driving skills. Here's what we mean:

- Tune your senses to different kinds of signals. Your eyes, for example, need to constantly sweep the terrain for unexpected obstacles. Your ears need to listen for unusual tire or engine sounds. With your arms, hands, feet and body, you'll need to respond to vibrations and vehicle bounce.

### *Driving Off-Road*

Controlling your vehicle is the key to successful off-road driving. One of the best ways to control your vehicle is to control your speed. Here are some things to keep in mind. At higher speeds:

- you approach things faster and you have less time to scan the terrain for obstacles.
- you have less time to react.
- you have more vehicle bounce when you drive over obstacles.
- you'll need more distance for braking, especially since you're on an unpaved surface.

**⚠ CAUTION**

When you're driving off-road, bouncing and quick changes in direction can easily throw you out of position. This could cause you to lose control and crash. So, whether you're driving on or off the road, you and your passengers should wear safety belts.

When you drive over obstacles or rough terrain, keep a firm grip on the steering wheel. Ruts, troughs or other surface features can jerk the wheel out of your hands if you're not prepared.

When you drive over bumps, rocks, or other obstacles, your wheels can leave the ground. If this happens, even with one or two wheels, you can't control the vehicle as well or at all.

Because you will be on an unpaved surface, it's especially important to avoid sudden acceleration, sudden turns or sudden braking.

### *Driving on Hills*

Off-road driving often takes you up, down or across a hill. Driving safely on hills requires good judgement and an understanding of what your vehicle can and can't do. There are some hills that simply can't be driven, no matter how well built the vehicle.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Many hills are simply too steep for any vehicle. If you drive up them, you will stall. If you drive down them, you can't control your speed. If you drive across them, you will roll over. You could be seriously injured or killed. If you have any doubt about the steepness, don't drive the hill.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 257 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



### *Approaching a Hill*

When you approach a hill, you need to decide if it's one of those hills that's just too steep to climb, descend or cross. Steepness can be hard to judge. On a very small hill, for example, there may be a smooth, constant incline with only a small change in elevation where you can easily see all the way to the top. On a large hill, the incline may get steeper as you near the top, but you may not see this because the crest of the hill is hidden by bushes, grass or shrubs.

Here are some other things to consider as you approach a hill.

- Is there a constant incline, or does the hill get sharply steeper in places?
- Is there good traction on the hillside, or will the surface cause tire slipping?
- Is there a straight path up or down the hill so you won't have to make turning maneuvers?
- Are there obstructions on the hill that can block your path (boulders, trees, logs or ruts)?
- What's beyond the hill? Is there a cliff, an embankment, a drop-off, a fence? Get out and walk the hill if you don't know. It's the smart way to find out.
- Is the hill simply too rough? Steep hills often have ruts, gullies, troughs and exposed rocks because they are more susceptible to the effects of erosion.

### *Driving Uphill*

Once you decide you can safely drive up the hill, you need to take some special steps.

- Use a low gear and get a firm grip on the steering wheel.
- Get a smooth start up the hill and try to maintain your speed. Don't use more power than you need, because you don't want your wheels to start spinning or sliding.
- Try to drive straight up the hill if at all possible. If the path twists and turns, you might want to find another route.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Turning or driving across steep hills can be dangerous. You could lose traction, slide sideways, and possibly roll over. You could be seriously injured or killed. When driving up hills, always try to go straight up.

- Ease up on your speed as you approach the top of the hill.
- Attach a flag to the vehicle to make you more visible to approaching traffic on trails or hills.
- Sound the horn as you approach the top of the hill to let opposing traffic know you're there.
- Use your headlamps even during the day. They make you more visible to oncoming traffic.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Driving to the top (crest) of a hill at full speed can cause an accident. There could be a drop-off, embankment, cliff, or even another vehicle. You could be seriously injured or killed. As you near the top of a hill, slow down and stay alert.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 259 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



### *Driving Downhill*

When off-roading takes you downhill, you'll want to consider a number of things:

- How steep is the downhill slope? Will I be able to maintain vehicle control?
- What's the surface like? Smooth? Rough? Slippery? Hard-packed dirt? Gravel?
- Are there hidden surface obstacles? Ruts? Logs? Boulders?
- What's at the bottom of the hill? Is there a hidden creek bank or even a river bottom with large rocks?

If you decide you can go down a hill safely, then try to keep your vehicle headed straight down, and use a low gear. This way, engine drag can help your brakes and they won't have to do all the work. Descend slowly, keeping your vehicle under control at all times.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Heavy braking when going down a hill can cause your brakes to overheat and fade. This could cause loss of control and a serious accident. Apply the brakes lightly when descending a hill and use a low gear to keep vehicle speed under control.

### *Driving Across an Incline*

Sooner or later, an off-road trail will probably go across the incline of a hill. If this happens, you have to decide whether to try to drive across the incline. Here are some things to consider:

- A hill that can be driven straight up or down may be too steep to drive across. When you go straight up or down a hill, the length of the wheel base (the distance from the front wheels to the rear wheels) reduces the likelihood the vehicle will tumble end over end.

When you drive across an incline, however, the much more narrow track width (the distance between the left and right wheels) may not prevent the vehicle from tilting and rolling over. Also, driving across an incline puts more weight on the downhill wheels. This could cause a downhill slide or a rollover.

- Surface conditions can be a problem when you drive across a hill. Loose gravel, muddy spots, or even wet grass can cause your tires to slip sideways, downhill. If the vehicle slips sideways, it can hit something that will trip it (a rock, a rut, etc.) and it will roll over.
- Hidden obstacles can make the steepness of the incline even worse. If you drive across a rock with the uphill wheels, or if the downhill wheels drop into a rut or depression, your vehicle can tilt even worse.

For reasons like these, you need to decide carefully whether to try to drive across an incline. Just because the trail goes across the incline doesn't mean you have to drive it. The last vehicle to try it might have rolled over.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Driving across an incline that's too steep will make your vehicle roll over. You could be seriously injured or killed. If you have any doubt about the steepness of the incline, don't drive across it. Find another route instead.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Getting out on the downhill (low) side of a vehicle stopped across an incline is dangerous. If the vehicle rolls over, you could be crushed or killed. Always get out on the uphill (high) side of the vehicle and stay well clear of the rollover path.

### *Driving in Mud, Sand, Snow or Ice*

When you drive in mud, snow, ice or sand, your wheels won't get good traction. You can't accelerate as quickly, turning is more difficult, and you'll need longer braking distances.

It's best to use a low gear when you're in mud - the deeper the mud, the lower the gear. In really deep mud, the idea is to keep your vehicle moving so you don't get stuck.

When you drive on sand, you'll sense a change in wheel traction. This will depend, however, upon how loosely packed the sand is. On loosely packed sand (as on beaches or sand dunes) your tires will tend to sink into the sand. This has an effect on steering, accelerating and braking.

Drive at a reduced speed.

If at all possible, avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers.

Hard packed snow and ice offer the worst tire traction. On these surfaces, it's very easy to lose control. On wet ice, for example, the traction is so poor that you will have difficulty accelerating. And if you do get moving, poor steering and difficult braking can cause you to slide out of control.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Driving on frozen lakes, ponds or rivers can be dangerous. Underwater springs, currents under the ice, or sudden thaws can weaken the ice. Your vehicle could fall through the ice and you and your passengers could drown. Drive your vehicle on safe surfaces only.

### *Driving in Water*

Heavy rain can mean flash flooding, and flood waters demand extreme caution.

Find out how deep the water is before you drive through it. If it's deep enough to cover your wheel hubs, axles or exhaust pipe, don't drive through it. Also, water that is deep can damage your axle and other vehicle parts.

If the water isn't too deep, then drive through it slowly. At fast speeds, water splashes on your ignition system and your vehicle can stall. Stalling can also occur if you get your tailpipe under water. And, as long as your tailpipe is under water, you'll never be able to start your engine. When you go through water, remember that when your brakes get wet, it may take you longer to stop.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Driving through rushing water can be dangerous. Deep water can sweep your vehicle downstream and you and your passengers could drown. If it's only shallow water; it can still wash away the ground from under your tires, and you could lose traction and roll the vehicle over. Don't drive through rushing water.

## ■ VEHICLE PARKING

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Avoid leaving your vehicle while the engine is running.

If you are not in an idling vehicle, the engine could overheat and even catch fire. You or others could be injured. Do not let the engine run when you are not in the vehicle.

### *Shifting Into P (Park)*

**⚠ *CAUTION***

If you do not park your vehicle properly, it can roll. If you leave the engine running, it could move quickly. You or others could be injured. To be sure the vehicle does not move, follow the steps below.

In order to shift into **P** (Park), do the following:

1. Apply the regular brakes.
2. Set the parking brake firmly.
3. Shift into **P** (Park).

   Pull the shift lever toward you, then move it up as far as it will go.
4. Turn off the ignition and remove the key.

If you must leave your vehicle with the engine running, check that the shift lever is fully in **P** (Park). To do this, hold down the brake pedal and try to move the shift lever without first pulling it toward you. If you can, it means that the shift lever was not fully locked in **P** (Park).

Be sure the shift lever is in **P** (Park) and the parking brake is firmly applied when you leave your vehicle.

### *Shifting Out of P (Park)*

Your vehicle has an automatic transmission shift lock control system. With the engine running, you have to fully apply the regular brakes before you can shift out of **P** (Park).

This system is designed to prevent ignition key removal unless the shift lever is in **P** (Park) and the shift lever is fully released.

The shift lock control system may not operate if your vehicle has a dead or low-voltage battery.

If the vehicle's battery is dead, jump start the vehicle. See "Jump Starting" in Section 5.

If you cannot shift out of **P** (Park), ease pressure on the shift lever.

1. Apply and hold the brake pedal.
2. Push the shift lever all the way into **P** (Park).
3. Try to shift out of **P** (Park), into the gear you want.

If the problem persists, see your dealer for service.

If you need to have your vehicle towed, see "Towing" in Section 5 for vehicle towing information.

### *Torque Lock*

If you park your vehicle on a hill, make sure to apply the parking brake first before shifting into **P** (Park). Otherwise, there will be excessive pressure on the parking mechanism which will make it difficult to shift out of **P** (Park). Before moving, always shift out of **P** (Park) then release the parking brake.

If you cannot shift out of **P** (Park), you may need to have another vehicle push yours a little uphill. This takes some of the pressure from the parking mechanism in the transmission, so you can pull the shift lever out of **P** (Park).

### *Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist*

The display for this system can be seen when looking in the rearview mirror or by looking over your shoulder. For information about this system, see "Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist" in Section 1.

### *Rear Vision Camera*

This feature is designed to assist the driver when the vehicle is shifted into **R** (Reverse).

For information on how to use this system, see the separate navigation system manual.

## ■ TRACTION

There are three systems that control the vehicle: steering, brakes, and accelerator. To keep the vehicle under control, **do not** push any of these systems beyond their limits.

### *Stabilitrak® System*

This system combines antilock brake, traction and stability control systems to help maintain directional control under most driving conditions.

See Section 1 for more information on the Stabilitrak® system.

***NOTICE***

You should normally leave the system in its normal operating mode, however make sure to turn the system off if the vehicle is stuck in mud, sand or snow.

### *Locking Rear Axle*

The locking rear axle can give added traction on snow, ice, etc. Normally, the locking axle unit works like a standard axle. However, when either drive wheel is on a slippery surface and the opposite wheel has better traction, the locking unit can continue to move the vehicle even though one of the wheels may initially be spinning.

## ■ STEERING

### *Power Steering*

If you lose power steering assist because the engine stops or the system is malfunctioning, you can still steer but it will take much more effort.

## ■ BRAKES

If the engine stops as you're driving, brake normally but don't pump your brakes. If the engine stops, you will have some power brake assist left, but it's used up as you brake.

The brake pedal may be harder to push and it may take longer to stop.

### *Disc Brake Wear Indicators*

Your vehicle has four-wheel disc brakes.

Disc brake pads have built-in wear indicators that make a high-pitched warning sound when the brake pads are worn and new ones are needed.

Some conditions or climates may cause disc brakes to squeal when they are first or lightly applied. This does not indicate a problem with the brakes.

Brake linings should always be replaced as complete axle sets.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

The brake wear warning sound means that soon your brakes won't work well. That could lead to an accident. When you hear the brake wear warning sound, have the vehicle serviced.

**NOTICE**

Continuing to drive with worn-out brake pads could result in costly brake repairs.

The repairs would not be covered by your warranty.

**NOTICE**

Improperly tightened wheel nuts can lead to brake pulsation and rotor damage. To avoid expensive brake repairs, evenly tighten the wheel nuts in the proper sequence and to the proper torque specification.

See "Specifications and Capacities" in Section 4 for the proper wheel nut torque.

### *Brake Adjustment*

Every time you apply the brakes to stop, your disc brakes adjust themselves for wear.

### *Brake Pedal Travel*

See your dealer if the brake pedal does not return to normal height, or if there is a rapid increase in pedal travel. This could be a sign that service is required.

### *Adjustable Brake Pedal*

Your vehicle is equipped with adjustable accelerator and brake pedals. See "Adjustable Accelerator and Brake Pedals" earlier in this section for more information.

### *Antilock Brake System*

The antilock brake system helps you maintain directional stability on wet or slippery road surfaces. It automatically controls the brake operation when braking.

This occurs only during a brake application which would have caused one or more wheels to lock. You don't have to 'pump' the brakes. Just hold the brake pedal down. You may feel or hear it pulsate, but this is normal.

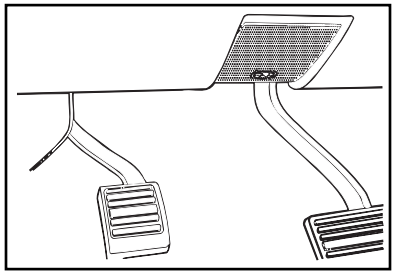
As you brake, the system receives updates on wheel speed and controls braking pressure at each wheel separately, as necessary.

See "Antilock Brake System Warning Light" in Section 1 for more information.

### *Dynamic Rear Proportioning*

The Dynamic Rear Proportioning system recognizes changes in wheel spin and instructs the brake system to modulate the pressure applied to the rear brakes regardless of load conditions.

Dynamic Rear Proportioning helps to provide more balanced braking, better control and extended brake pad life.



## *Parking Brake*

The parking brake pedal is located to the left of the driver's left foot.

To set the parking brake, hold the regular brake pedal down with your right foot and then push down the parking brake pedal with your left foot.

If the ignition is on, the Brake System Warning light should turn on.

If you begin to drive while the parking brake is not yet released, the brake system warning light will flash and a chime will sound to alert you.

See "Brake System Warning Light" in Section 1.

***NOTICE***

Do not drive with the parking brake set.

Driving with the parking brake on can cause the brake system to overheat and may result in premature wear or damage to brake system components. Always check that the parking brake is fully released before you begin to drive.

If your vehicle is equipped with a parking brake release handle on the instrument panel, hold the regular brake pedal down with your right foot and pull the parking brake handle to release the parking brake.

If your vehicle does not have a parking brake release handle, push the brake pedal down with your right foot and the parking brake pedal down with your left foot. When you lift your left foot up, the parking brake will release.

If you park your vehicle on a grade, set the parking brake before shifting the automatic transmission into **P** (Park).

### *Brake Assist*

Your vehicle is equipped with a brake assist feature. During a hard brake application, the system automatically delivers extra braking pressure to the wheels and activates the antilock brake system.

You may feel some vibration or hear a noise when the system is active. The brake pedal may move slightly. This is normal.

Just hold the brake pedal down firmly and let the system work for you.

The brakes will return to normal operation when the brake pedal is released or pedal pressure decreases rapidly.

## ■ SUSPENSION

The suspension system in your vehicle is designed to provide a smooth and controlled ride.

### *Automatic Level Control*

This rear suspension level control system automatically adjusts your ride and handling under a variety of vehicle load conditions.

The system is fully automatic.

Once the ignition is turned to **ON**, an air compressor connected to the rear shocks will automatically raise or lower the rear of the vehicle to maintain proper vehicle height while you drive.

When the ignition is turned to **LOCK**, it may take up to ten minutes for the system to lower the vehicle.

It is normal to hear the compressor operate as vehicle height is being adjusted.

### *Magnetic Ride Control*

Your vehicle may be equipped with this feature.

Each corner of the vehicle is continuously adjusted to an appropriate damping level based on vehicle speed, wheel-to-body position, steering position and the vehicle's lift/dive characteristics.

This system also interacts with the Tow/Haul Mode (when active) to provide better ride and handling when the vehicle is loaded or towing a trailer.

See "Tow/Haul Mode" under "Trailer Towing" for additional information.

### *Road Sensing Suspension*

Your vehicle may be equipped with this feature.

The Road Sensing Suspension system provides optimum ride and handling under a variety of vehicle load conditions.

The system is fully automatic.

Each corner of the vehicle is continuously adjusted to an appropriate damping level based on vehicle speed, wheel-to-body position, steering position and the vehicle's lift/dive characteristics.

This system also interacts with the Tow/Haul Mode (when active) to provide better ride and handling when the vehicle is loaded or towing a trailer.

See "Tow/Haul Mode" under "Trailer Towing" for additional information.

Also, see "Automatic Level Control" earlier in this section.

## ■ VEHICLE LOADING

**⚠ CAUTION**

Things you put inside your vehicle can strike and injure people in a sudden stop or turn, or in a crash. Put things in the cargo area of your vehicle and try to spread the weight evenly. Never stack things inside the vehicle any higher than the seatbacks. Do not leave unsecured child restraints inside the vehicle. Try to secure anything that is carried inside the vehicle. Do not leave a seat folded down unless you have to.

It is very important to know how much weight your vehicle can carry.

This weight is called the Vehicle Capacity Weight.

This figure includes the weight of all occupants, cargo and all nonfactory-installed options.

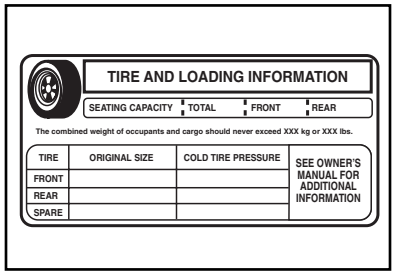
**NOTICE**

Your vehicle's warranty does not cover parts or components that fail because of overloading.

**⚠ CAUTION**

The components of your vehicle are designed to provide satisfactory service if the vehicle is not loaded in excess of the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating. Also, do not exceed the front or rear Gross Axle Weight Ratings.

Overloading can result in loss of vehicle control and personal injury. It can also shorten the service life of your vehicle.




## *Tire and Loading Information Label*

This label shows the proper size and recommended inflation pressures for your vehicle's tires.

See "Tires" in Section 4 for more information.

The tire information label is on the rear pillar of the driver's door frame.

It also tells how many people can ride in your vehicle and gives you the Vehicle Capacity Weight.

Do not exceed the maximum vehicle capacity when loading your vehicle.

See "Certification Label" for additional loading information.

Also, see the following for more information:

- Off-Road Driving

## *Certification Label*

This label, located on the rear edge of the driver's door, shows the size of your original tires and the inflation pressures needed to obtain your vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating is the maximum permissible loaded weight of the vehicle. It includes the weight of the vehicle, all occupants, fuel and cargo, as well as the weight of the trailer tongue if you are pulling a trailer.

Using heavier suspension components for extra durability might not change your weight rating. Ask your dealer to help you load your vehicle the right way.

**Maximum Front and Rear Axle Weights**

The label also shows the maximum weight that the front axle can carry (the front Gross Axle Weight Rating) and the maximum weight that the rear axle can carry (the rear Gross Axle Weight Rating).

The weight of the cargo load must be properly distributed over both the front and rear axles.

If you are unsure of your vehicle's front, rear or total weight, weigh the vehicle at a weigh station. Your dealer can assist you with this.

## ■ TRAILER TOWING

**⚠ *CAUTION***

If you don't use the correct equipment and drive properly, you could lose control when you pull a trailer behind your vehicle. You could have a serious accident.

For example, if the trailer is too heavy, the brakes may not work well, or they may not even work at all.

You and your passengers could be seriously injured.

***NOTICE***

Pulling a trailer improperly can damage your vehicle and result in costly repairs not covered by your warranty. To pull a trailer correctly, follow the advice in this section.

If you think you want to pull a trailer, see your dealer for information on your vehicle's trailer towing ability.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 275 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



### ⚠ CAUTION

If you have a rear-most window open and you pull a trailer with your vehicle, carbon monoxide (CO) could come into your vehicle. You can't see or smell CO. It can cause unconsciousness or death.

To maximize your safety when towing a trailer:

- Have your exhaust system inspected for leaks, and make necessary repairs before starting on your trip.
- Never drive with the liftgate or the rear-most windows open.

### ⚠ CAUTION (Continued)

If exhaust does come into your vehicle through a window in the rear or another opening, drive with your front, main heating or cooling system on with the fan on any speed and using any setting that brings in outside air. This will bring fresh air into your vehicle. See "Heating and Air Conditioning System" in Section 1.

### NOTICE

Making very sharp turns while trailering could cause the trailer to come into contact with your vehicle. To avoid vehicle damage, do not make very sharp turns while trailering.

The maximum loaded trailer weight you can pull with your vehicle depends on your intended use and what special equipment has been installed on the vehicle. Information on trailer towing ability, special equipment required, and optional equipment available should be obtained from your dealer.

Installation of towing equipment should be carried out only by your dealer. Your dealer has the proper installation specifications and is aware of any necessary vehicle modifications.

If you do decide to pull a trailer, here are some important points:

- The gross axle weight ratings and the gross vehicle weight rating must not be exceeded.

  Trailer tongue weight must be included in the total vehicle weight.

  See "Vehicle Loading" earlier in this section for more information.

- The Gross Combination Weight Rating is the maximum permissible total loaded weight of both the vehicle and the trailer. Remember to include the weights of the people that will ride inside the vehicle.

  The total of the vehicle weight and the trailer weight must not exceed the Gross Combination Weight Rating.

- Trailering may be limited by the vehicle's ability to carry tongue weight.

  Tongue weight must not cause the vehicle to exceed the gross vehicle weight rating or the rear gross axle weight ratings.

  The effect of additional weight may reduce your trailering capacity more than the total of the additional weight.

- The only way to be sure you are not exceeding any weight ratings is to weigh your vehicle and trailer.

- Don't tow a trailer at all during the first 800 km (500 miles) your new vehicle is driven. The engine, axle or other parts could be damaged.

- During the first 800 km (500 miles) of trailer towing, don't drive over 80 km/h (50 mph) and don't make full-throttle starts.

- Be sure your vehicle's tires are inflated to the limit for cold tires.

  See the tire information label for your vehicle's tire inflation specifications.

  Also, see "Vehicle Loading" earlier in this section for more information.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 277 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



- When towing a trailer with an automatic transmission, operate your vehicle in **D** (Drive).

  You may want to shift into a lower gear if the transmission shifts too often.

- You should not park vehicles with trailers on a grade (hill). However, if you must park on a grade, have someone place wheel chocks under the trailer wheels.

  For more information, see "Parking On Hills" later in this section.

- Your vehicle may show signs of overheating if you turn your engine off immediately after towing at high altitudes on steep uphill grades.

  If possible, park on a level surface. Set the parking brake firmly. Shift the automatic transmission into **P** (Park).

  Allow the engine to idle for a few minutes before turning the engine off.

  If you do get an overheat warning, see "Engine Overheating" in Section 5 for instructions.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

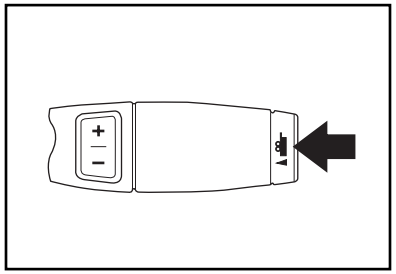
Trailer brakes of adequate size are required on trailers of more than 900 kilograms (2,000 pounds) loaded weight.

To reduce the effect of trailer tongue weight on your vehicle's rear axle, choose the shortest hitch extension that will position the hitch ball closest to the vehicle.

### *Tow/Haul Mode*

Use this feature when pulling a heavy trailer. It helps by reducing the frequency of shifts and the need to change throttle position and by providing the same shift feel as when the vehicle is not loaded.

Using tow/haul mode will also increase charging system voltage to assist in recharging a battery installed on a trailer.



To turn this feature on, press the tow/haul button located at the end of the shift lever. The tow/haul warning light will turn on.

To turn this feature off, press the button again or turn off the engine. The system is automatically turned off each time the vehicle is started.

The tow/haul mode is most effective when the combined weight of the vehicle and the trailer is at least 75% of the Gross Combination Weight Rating.

The tow/haul mode is most useful under the following conditions:

- when driving through hilly terrain
- when driving in low speed or stop and go traffic
- when parking the vehicle

If you operate the vehicle in the tow/haul mode when you are not pulling a trailer or when lightly loaded, you may experience reduced fuel economy and poor engine and transmission performance.

Only use the tow/haul mode when pulling a trailer or hauling a large or heavy load.

This system interacts with the automatic ride control system to provide optimum ride and handling when towing a trailer or when hauling a heavy load.

See the following, earlier in this section, for more information:

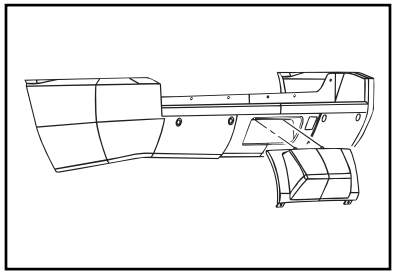
- Magnetic Ride Control
- Road Sensing Suspension

### *Hitches*

It's important to have the correct hitch equipment. Sidewinds and rough roads are a few reasons why you'll need the right hitch.

See your dealer for more information.

# Starting and Operating Instructions



**HITCH COVER (IF EQUIPPED)**

Your vehicle may be equipped with this feature.

To remove the cover, do the following:

1. Rotate the two fasteners, located at the bottom of the cover, counterclockwise 90°.
2. Lift the lower edge of the cover upward to about a 45° angle.
3. Then, pull the cover down and toward you to remove it.

Store the cover in a safe location for future use.

To reinstall the cover, do the following:

1. Hold the cover at a 45° angle to the vehicle to align the tabs at the top of the cover with the slots on the rear fascia.

   Push upward to insert the tabs in the fascia.
2. Push the bottom of the cover forward to align the tabs at the bottom of the cover with slots in the fascia. Press on the upper corners of the cover to snap it into place.
3. Rotate the two fasteners, located at the bottom of the cover, clockwise 90° to secure the cover.

### *Safety Chains*

You should always attach chains between your vehicle and your trailer. Cross the safety chains under the tongue of the trailer so that the tongue will not drop to the road if it becomes separated from the hitch. Instructions about safety chains may be provided by the hitch manufacturer or by the trailer manufacturer.

Always leave just enough slack so you can turn with your rig. And, never allow safety chains to drag on the ground.

### *Trailer Brakes*

Trailer brakes of adequate size are required on trailers of more than 900 kilograms (2,000 pounds) loaded weight.

Read and follow all instructions that come with the trailer brakes.

Your vehicle is equipped with the Stabilitrak® System. Do not tap into the vehicle's hydraulic brake system when installing trailer brakes.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Do not tap into the vehicle's hydraulic brake system. Otherwise, your vehicle's brake systems may not work well. You could even lose your brakes.

You or others could be injured or killed.

### *Trailer Turn Signals*

When towing a trailer, the arrows on your instrument cluster will flash for turns even if the bulbs on the trailer are burned out. You may think drivers behind you are seeing your signal, when actually they are not. It is important that you check occasionally to be sure that the trailer bulbs are still working.

### *Parking on Hills*

**⚠ CAUTION**

When towing a trailer, avoid parking your vehicle on a hill. If something were to go wrong, your rig could start to move. People could be injured and both your vehicle and the trailer could be damaged.

You should not park vehicles with trailers on a grade (hill). However, if you must park on a grade, follow these steps:

1. Apply your regular brakes, but don't shift into **P** (Park) yet.

   If the vehicle is facing downhill, turn the wheels toward the curb. If it is facing uphill, turn the wheels toward traffic.
2. Have someone place chocks under the trailer wheels.
3. When the wheel chocks are in place, release the regular brakes until the chocks absorb the load.
4. Reapply the regular brakes. Then apply your parking brake, and then shift to **P** (Park).
5. Release the regular brakes.

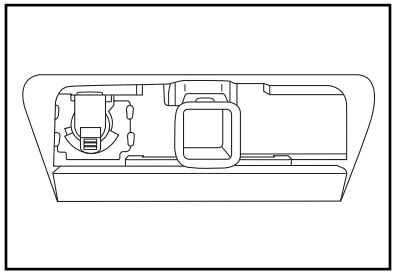
**⚠ CAUTION**

Be sure the shift lever is in **P** (Park) and the parking brake is firmly applied when you leave your vehicle.

When you are ready to leave after parking on a hill, be sure to hold the regular brake pedal down while you start the engine, shift into gear and release the parking brake.

Drive slowly until the trailer is clear of the chocks.

Stop and have someone pick up and store the chocks.



## *Wiring Harness*

**Heavy-Duty Trailer Wiring Package**

The harness has twelve blunt cut wires bundled together and located behind the rear bumper.

The trailering harness contains the following trailer circuits:

- Light Blue: Trailer stoplight
- Yellow: Left turn signal
- Brown: Left taillights and parking lights
- Dark Green: Right turn signal
- Gray: Right taillights and parking lights
- Light Green: Back-up lights
- Purple: Rear fog lights
- Red/Black: Battery feed†
- Pink: Trailer connected signal
- Black: Ground
- White: Ground
- Dark Blue: Electric trailer brakes†*

†The fuses for these two circuits are located in the engine compartment fuse block. The wires are not connected. See your dealer or a qualified service technician to have the wires connected.

*If you are charging a remote, non-vehicle battery, turn on the tow/haul mode to boost the vehicle system voltage and properly charge the battery.

**ELECTRIC BRAKE CONTROL WIRING PROVISIONS**

The wiring provisions are for the electric trailer brake controller and include blunt cut wires located in the instrument panel. The controller should be installed by your dealer.

The harness contains the following circuits:

- Dark Blue: Electric trailer brake output
- Red/Black: Battery feed
- Light Blue/White: Brake Switch
- White: Ground

Note:

The red/black stripe power feed will not be connected to the battery until the ring terminal is connected to the underhood electrical center.

## *Maintenance When Trailer Towing*

Your vehicle will need service more often when you're pulling a trailer. See the Maintenance Schedule for more on this.

Check periodically to see that all hitch nuts and bolts are tight.

## ■ RECREATIONAL VEHICLE TOWING

If you decide to tow your vehicle behind another vehicle for use at your destination, be sure to use the proper towing equipment. Follow all instructions that come with the towing equipment.

The two most common methods for recreational vehicle towing are:

- towing your vehicle with all four wheels on the ground
- towing your vehicle with two wheels on the ground and two wheels up on a dolly

### TOWING YOUR VEHICLE WITH ALL FOUR WHEELS ON THE GROUND

Your vehicle was not designed to be towed with any of its wheels on the ground.

See your dealer or a professional towing service if you need to have your vehicle towed.

***NOTICE***

Do not tow your vehicle with any of its wheels on the ground.

Towing your vehicle with any of its wheels on the ground will damage drivetrain components.

### TOWING YOUR VEHICLE WITH TWO WHEELS ON THE GROUND AND TWO WHEELS UP ON A DOLLY

Your vehicle was not designed to be towed with any of its wheels on the ground.

See your dealer or a professional towing service if you need to have your vehicle towed.

***NOTICE***

Do not tow your vehicle with any of its wheels on the ground.

Towing your vehicle with any of its wheels on the ground will damage drivetrain components.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 286 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM

AKENG44_Escalade Page 287 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



**Maintenance Guidelines** ..... 288
**Doing Your Own Service Work** ..... 288
**Accessories and Modifications** ..... 289
**Fuel** ..... 289
Ethanol (E-85) Fuel ..... 291
Fuel Consumption and Emissions Information ..... 293
Filling the Tank ..... 294
**Hood Release** ..... 297
**Engine Compartment** ..... 298
Engine Oil ..... 300
Engine Coolant ..... 306
Automatic Transmission Fluid ..... 309
Transfer Case Lubricant ..... 315
Front Axle Lubricant ..... 315
Rear Axle Lubricant ..... 316
Power Steering Fluid ..... 317
Brake Master Cylinder Fluid ..... 318
Windshield Washer Fluid ..... 320
Battery ..... 321
Air Cleaner/Filter ..... 321
**Recommended Fluids and Lubricants** ..... 323
**Tires** ..... 325
Inflation ..... 326
Inspection and Rotation ..... 328
Tire Replacement ..... 330
Tire Chains ..... 332
Spare Tire ..... 332
**Wheels** ..... 333
Wheel Alignment and Tire Balancing ..... 333
Wheel Replacement ..... 333
**Vehicle Identification Number** ..... 335
**Service Parts Identification Label** ..... 335
**Fuses and Circuit Breakers** ..... 336
Left Instrument Panel Fuse Block ..... 338
Center Instrument Panel Utility Block ..... 340
Underhood Electrical Center ..... 341
**Bulb Replacement** ..... 345
**Replacement Bulb Specifications** ..... 347
**Specifications and Capacities** ..... 348
Component Specifications ..... 348
Capacities (Approximate) ..... 349
**Fuel Consumption and Emissions Information** ..... 350
**Appearance Care** ..... 351

## ■ MAINTENANCE GUIDELINES

**The required maintenance intervals vary considerably between climates, geographical locations, terrain and driving conditions. The export-specific Maintenance Schedule booklet provided with your vehicle shows the intervals required for the various maintenance procedures for your specific area. Make sure to follow the maintenance intervals listed in the export-specific Maintenance Schedule booklet and not those listed in any other English booklet that might be provided with your vehicle.**

### ⚠ *CAUTION*

Make sure you dispose of materials in accordance with environmental protection regulations to help protect the environment and your health.

Some parts cannot be recycled.

## ■ DOING YOUR OWN SERVICE WORK

### ⚠ *CAUTION*

You can be injured and the vehicle could be damaged if you try to do service work on a vehicle without knowing enough about it.

- Be sure you have sufficient knowledge, experience, the proper replacement parts, and tools before attempting any vehicle maintenance task.
- Be sure to use the proper nuts, bolts, and other fasteners. English and metric fasteners can be easily confused. If the wrong fasteners are used, parts can later break or fall off. You could be hurt.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 289 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



If doing some of your own service work, use the proper service manual.

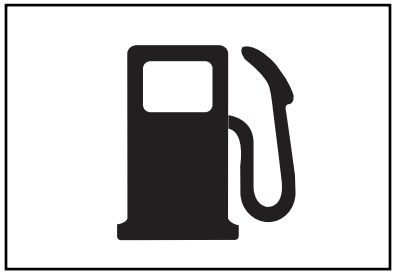
## ■ ACCESSORIES AND MODIFICATIONS

Adding accessories to your vehicle can affect your vehicle's performance and safety.

Modifications may cause problems or damage to vehicle systems such as air bags, braking, stability, ride and handling, emissions, aerodynamics, durability, and electronic systems like antilock brakes, traction control and stability control.

This damage would not be covered by your warranty and may affect remaining warranty coverage for affected parts.

See your dealer before adding any equipment.



## ■ FUEL

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Fuel vapor is highly flammable. Keep sparks, flames and smoking materials away from fuel.

**NOTICE**

Use clean fuel only. Contaminated fuel may reduce the life of the fuel delivery system and the engine.

Fuel containing the octane-enhancing additive called methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT) is not recommended.

See your dealer for information on additives.

**NOTICE**

Fuel containing oxygenates, such as ethers and ethanol, and reformulated fuel may be available in your area.

It is recommended that you use these fuels if they comply with the required fuel specifications.

However, E-85 (85% ethanol) and other fuels containing more than 10% ethanol must not be used in vehicles that were not designed for those fuels.

**NOTICE *(Continued)***

Your vehicle was not designed for fuels that contain methanol. Methanol can corrode metal parts in your fuel system and can also damage plastic and rubber parts. Damage caused by the use of fuels that contain methanol would not be covered by your warranty.

The engine in your vehicle is designed to accept unleaded gasoline only. The use of leaded gasoline could affect your vehicle's performance as well as your vehicle's warranty.

Use of the recommended fuel is an important part of the proper maintenance of your vehicle.

You should use a high quality fuel which meets the minimum octane rating recommended.

Use gasoline with a posted octane of 95 (research method) or higher. A middle grade gasoline with posted octane of 91 or higher can also be used, but the vehicle's acceleration may be slightly reduced.

Note:

You may use either regular unleaded gasoline or ethanol fuel up to 85% (E-85).

See "Ethanol (E-85) Fuel" later in this section for more information.

The use of gasoline with an octane rating lower than that recommended may cause engine knock. Continued use can cause engine damage and void the warranty.

If you detect a heavy engine knock even when using a gasoline of the recommended octane rating, have the engine checked. Short periods of engine knock during hill climbing and acceleration are acceptable.

## *Ethanol (E-85) Fuel*

**NOTICE**

Do not use methanol.

Your vehicle was not designed for fuels that contain methanol. Methanol can corrode metal parts in your fuel system and can also damage plastic and rubber parts. Damage caused by the use of fuels that contain methanol would not be covered by your warranty.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Some additives are not compatible with E-85 fuel and may harm your fuel system. Damage caused by the use of additives may not be covered by your new vehicle warranty. Do not use additives with E-85 fuel.

You may use either regular unleaded gasoline or ethanol fuel up to 85% (E-85).

E-85 fuel is a blend of approximately 85% ethanol and 15% gasoline. E-85 is a high-octane, renewable fuel made primarily from corn.

At a minimum, ethanol fuel should meet ASTM D 5798 specifications.

Fuel labeled E-85 that meets the ASTM D 5798 specifications will contain 70% to 85% ethanol.

Note:

Filling the fuel tank with fuel mixtures that do not meet ASTM specifications can affect driveability and could cause the malfunction indicator light to come on.

See "Malfunction Indicator Light" under "Indicator and Warning Lights" in Section 1 for more information.

Because your vehicle's fuel system is compatible with ethanol fuel, the fuel cap will be yellow with "**E-85 or gasoline**" (E-85 or gasoline) printed on it.

Your vehicle automatically detects the current fuel mixture in the fuel tank and adjusts the engine settings accordingly. You can fill the tank with gasoline or E-85, regardless of which fuel is already in the tank.

E-85 fuel offers less energy than gasoline, so you will need to refill your tank more often when using E-85.If you have trouble starting your vehicle while using E-85 fuel, switch to regular gasoline or add gasoline to the ethanol fuel in your fuel tank.

When switching between gasoline and E-85 fuel, add at least 11 L (2.9 U.S. gallons) of fuel. Drive the vehicle immediately after fueling for a minimum of 11 km (7 miles).

Switching repeatedly between gasoline and E-85 fuel is not recommended.

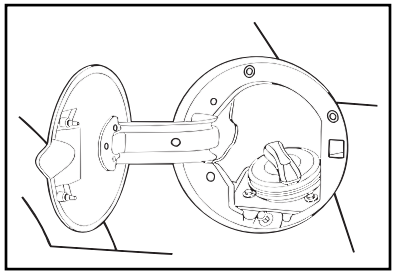
To ensure quick starts in cold weather, the E-85 fuel should be formulated properly for your climate.

For good starting and heater efficiency at temperatures below 0°C, the fuel mix in your vehicle should contain a maximum of 70% ethanol.

### *Fuel Consumption and Emissions Information*

See "Fuel Consumption and Emissions Information" later in this section for information regarding fuel consumption and carbon dioxide emissions.

# Service and Maintenance



## *Filling the Tank*

The cap is behind a hinged door on the left side of your vehicle.

Because your vehicle's fuel system is compatible with ethanol fuel, the fuel cap will be yellow with "**E-85 or gasoline**" printed on it.

Press on the center of the rear edge of the fuel door and it will pop open.

Remove the fuel filler cap by turning slowly counter-clockwise. The cap has a spring in it. If you let go of the cap too soon, it will spring back to the right. Replace it by turning it clockwise. When you put the cap back on, continue to turn it clockwise until you hear a clicking noise.

The fuel filler cap will require more effort to turn on the last turn when removing or tightening it.

If the fuel cap is not installed properly, the **TIGHTEN GAS CAP** message will appear on the Driver Information Center display. See "Driver Information Center Messages" in Section 1.

Also see "Malfunction Indicator Light" under "Warning Lights" in Section 1 for more information.

### ⚠ *CAUTION*

Fuel vapor is highly flammable. Keep sparks, flames and smoking materials away from fuel.

If you get gasoline on you and then something ignites it, you could be badly burned.

To avoid injuries to you and others, read and follow all instructions on the gas station pump.

Turn off your engine before refueling.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 295 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



**⚠ CAUTION**

Static electricity can ignite gasoline vapor. You can be burned and your vehicle damaged.

Before you open the fuel filler cap, touch a metal part on your vehicle to discharge the static electricity in your body.

Do not return to your seat while refueling. If you return to your seat, your body may be recharged with static electricity.

**⚠ CAUTION**

If you open the cap rapidly while pressure inside the tank is high, gasoline may spray out from the tank. Before you fully open the cap, turn it slightly to release the pressure from inside the tank.

If you hear a "hiss", wait for that to stop. The "hiss" means there is still some pressure left. Then, remove the cap.

**NOTICE**

If you have to get a new cap, be sure to get the right one. Otherwise, the cap may not vent properly, leading to serious fuel tank and emissions system damage. Your dealer knows the correct cap for your vehicle.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- Never fill a portable fuel container while it is in your vehicle.
- Dispense gasoline only into approved containers.
- Do not leave the fuel pump unattended while refueling.
- Keep children away from the fuel pump.
- Bring the fill nozzle in contact with the inside of the fill opening before operating the nozzle.

  Contact should be maintained until the filling is complete.
- Avoid answering or making phone calls on your cellular phone.
- Do not smoke while pumping gasoline.

**⚠ CAUTION**

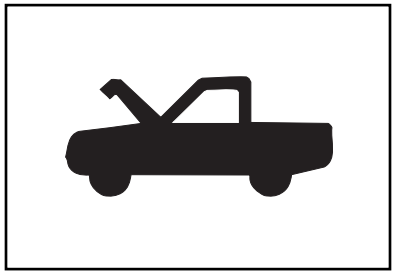
To allow room for fuel expansion in the fuel tank (caused by heat from the engine), fill the tank only until the pump's automatic nozzle shuts off.

**⚠ CAUTION**

If a fire starts while you are refueling, do not remove the nozzle. Stop the flow of fuel by turning off the pump. Notify the station attendant and leave the area immediately.

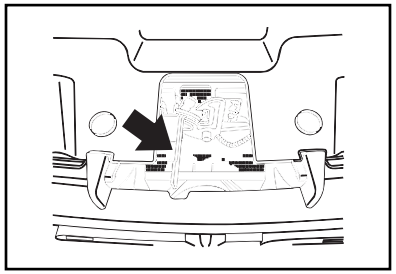
**NOTICE**

Don't spill fuel on the vehicle's exterior surfaces. It can damage your paint. If you do, wash it off as soon as possible.



## ■ HOOD RELEASE

To open the hood, first pull the handle inside the vehicle on the lower left side of the instrument panel.



Then push the secondary latch lever to the right located at the front of the vehicle and raise the hood.

**⚠ CAUTION**

An electric cooling fan can start even if the engine is not running. Be careful around any underhood electric fan.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Be careful not to drop or spill things that will burn onto a hot engine. They could start a fire and you or others could be burned.

Before closing the hood, make sure that all filler caps are on properly.

## ■ ENGINE COMPARTMENT

**⚠ CAUTION**

An electric cooling fan can start even if the engine is not running. Be careful around any underhood electric fan.

**⚠ CAUTION**

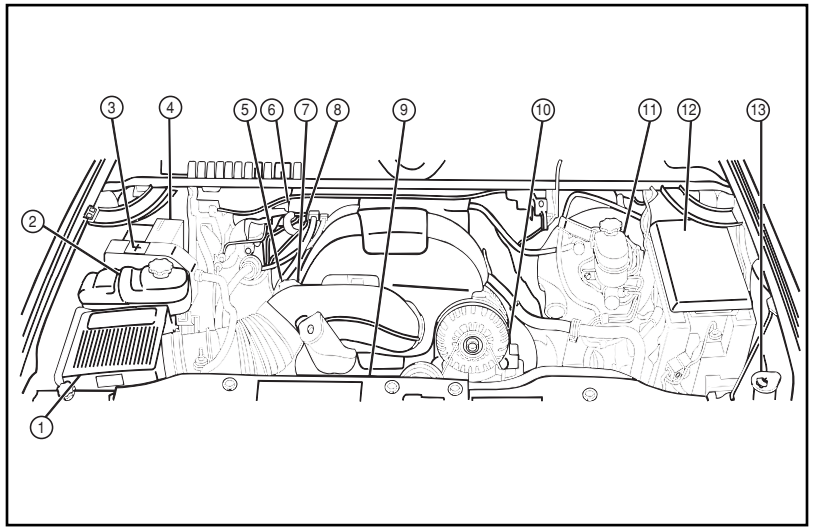
Be careful not to drop or spill things that will burn onto a hot engine. They could start a fire and you or others could be burned.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 299 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



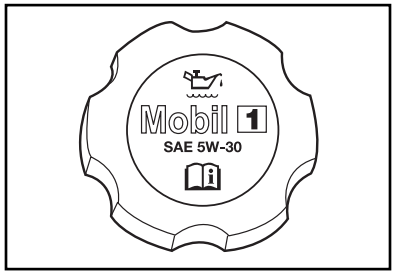
When you open the hood, you'll see:

1. Air Cleaner/Filter
2. Engine Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap
3. Remote Positive Battery Terminal
4. Battery
5. Oil Fill Cap
6. Automatic Transmission Dipstick
7. Remote Negative Battery Terminal
8. Engine Oil Dipstick




9. Engine Cooling Fan
10. Power Steering Fluid Reservoir
11. Brake Fluid Reservoir
12. Underhood Fuse Block
13. Windshield Washer Reservoir

# Service and Maintenance




## *Engine Oil*

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Used engine oil contains elements which are unhealthy for your skin and which may cause cancer. Wash hands after handling.

See the oil manufacturer's warnings about the use and disposal of oil or oil-contaminated products.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Used oil filters and empty oil containers should not be disposed of with regular trash.

Have the oil and oil filter changed by an authorized service center, familiar with the requirements of the law regarding used oil disposal, to help protect the environment and your health.

***NOTICE***

Do not flush the engine oil system.

The engine could be damaged and the repairs would not be covered by your warranty.

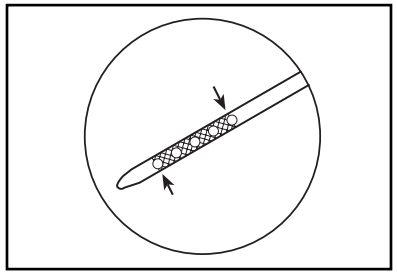
Engine oil must be kept at correct levels to help ensure proper lubrication of the vehicle's engine.

It is normal for an engine to use some oil, and some engines use more oil when they are new. It is the owner's responsibility to check the engine oil level regularly.

### Checking the Fluid Level

The best time to check the engine oil level is when the oil is warm:

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface and apply the parking brake.
2. Stop the engine and wait a few minutes for the oil to drain back into the oil pan.
3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it clean.
4. Reinsert the dipstick all the way until it is firmly seated.



5. Remove the dipstick again and check the oil level.

   Keep the dipstick pointed down to get an accurate reading.

   The oil level must be in the cross-hatched area on the dipstick. Add oil as required. Avoid over-filling the engine since this may cause engine damage.

**NOTICE**

Don't add too much oil. If your engine has so much oil that the oil level gets above the upper mark that shows the proper operating range, your engine could be damaged.

6. Reinsert the dipstick all the way until it is firmly seated.

# Service and Maintenance

### Choosing the Right Oil Quality

Your vehicle requires the use of a special oil meeting GM standard GM4718M.

Oil meeting this standard will also have the American Petroleum Institute Starburst symbol on its container.

Only use oil that has the American Petroleum Institute Starburst symbol on its container.

Your vehicle was filled with Mobil 1® synthetic oil at the factory, which meets all the requirements for your vehicle.

If you change the oil, be sure the oil you use meets GM Standard GM 4718M and has the American Petroleum Institute Starburst symbol on its container.

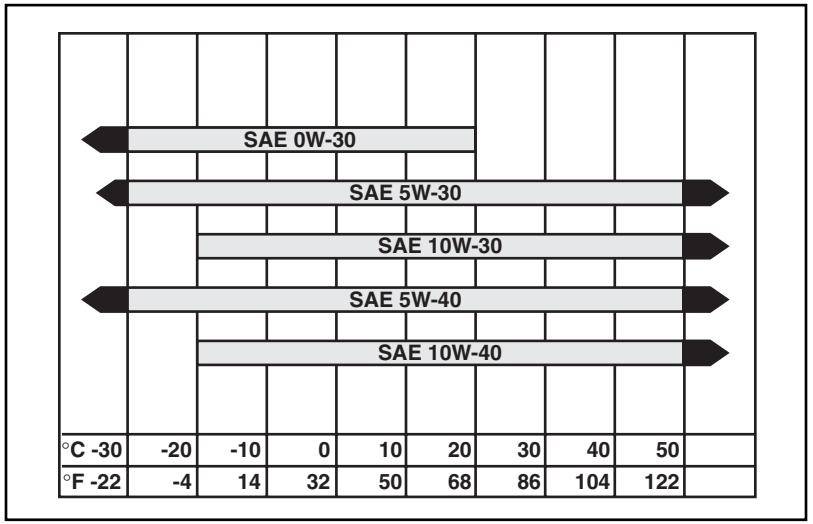
When you are not changing the oil but rather adding oil to maintain the engine oil level, oil meeting GM Standard GM 4718M may not be available. In this case, you may use an SAE 5W-30 oil with the starburst symbol on its container, as a substitute at all temperatures.

Substitute oil not meeting the GM4718M standard should not be used for an oil change.

If an oil meeting GM standard GM4718M is not available, use an oil that meets the American Petroleum Institute Service SM or GM-LL-A-025 service requirements.

**NOTICE**

Failure to use the recommended oil can result in engine damage not covered by your warranty.




**Choosing the Right Oil Viscosity**

SAE 5W-30 is best for your vehicle.

At temperatures below -29°C, an SAE 0W-30 oil may also be used to provide easier cold starting and better engine protection.

If you are unable to find oil of the recommended viscosity, then consider the range of temperature your vehicle will be operated in before the next oil change and use the chart to choose an alternative that meets the required quality standards.

***NOTICE***

Using engine oils of a viscosity other than those recommended could result in engine damage.

The repairs would not be covered by your warranty.

# Service and Maintenance

### Engine Oil Additives

Do not add anything to your engine oil. Oils of the recommended quality are all you need for good performance and engine protection.

Consult your dealer if you think your engine has an oil-related problem.

### Engine Oil Change Intervals

The required oil and oil filter change intervals vary considerably between climates, geographical locations, terrain and driving conditions. The export-specific Maintenance Schedule booklet provided with your vehicle shows the oil and oil filter change intervals required for your specific area. Make sure to follow the change intervals listed in the export-specific Maintenance Schedule booklet and not those listed in any other English booklet that might be provided with your vehicle.

The oil and oil filter change intervals recommended in the Maintenance Schedule for your engine are based on the use of recommended quality oils and high quality filters. Using oil other than those recommended, or changing the oil and filter at longer intervals than recommended could reduce engine life.

How frequently you have to change the oil depends on your driving patterns, engine rpm and engine temperature.

Depending on your driving conditions, the mileage interval at which an oil change is necessary can vary considerably.

After the **CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON** message comes on, change the engine oil within the next 1000 km (600 miles).

Even if the oil life system does not indicate that an oil change is necessary, the engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year.

After you change the oil, the oil life monitor will need to be reset. See your dealer for service.

See the following under "Driver Information Center" in Section 1 for more information:

- Vehicle Information Menu
  - **OIL LIFE REMAINING**

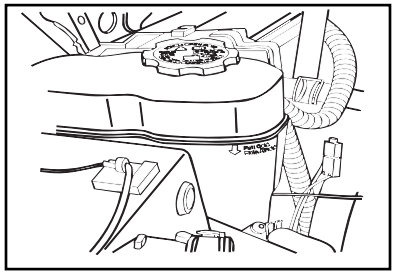
See "Driver Information Center" in Section 1 for information on the engine oil life monitor.

It is normal for an engine to use some oil, and some engines use more oil when they are new. It is the owner's responsibility to check the engine oil level regularly.

***NOTICE***

Engine damage resulting from improper maintenance is not covered by the New Vehicle Warranty.

# Service and Maintenance



## *Engine Coolant*

**⚠ *CAUTION***

If your engine overheats, see "Engine Overheating" in Section 5. Continued operation of the overheated engine, **even for a short time**, may result in a fire and the possibility of personal injury and/or severe vehicle damage.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

The cooling system in your vehicle is pressurized. Only add coolant when the cooling system or coolant is cold.

The cooling system in your vehicle is designed to use a coolant (a mixture of ethylene glycol, corrosion inhibitors and water) rather than plain water. Use a 50/50 mixture of clean water and DEX-COOL® coolant. If you use this mixture, you don't need to add anything else.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Adding only plain water or a liquid other than the recommended coolant can be dangerous. The engine could overheat, but you would not get the overheat warning. The engine could catch on fire and you or others could be burned.

***NOTICE***

If there is too much water in the coolant mixture, the liquid could freeze and crack the engine and other vehicle parts.

**NOTICE**

Do not substitute any liquids for the proper coolant mixture. Otherwise, premature corrosion may result and the engine coolant will require change sooner.

Damage caused by the use of any coolant that is not recommended is not covered by your new vehicle warranty.

**NOTICE**

If you use the proper coolant, you do not need any extra additives or inhibitors. These can be harmful to your vehicle.

Use only the recommended fluid.

See "Recommended Fluids and Lubricants" later in this section.

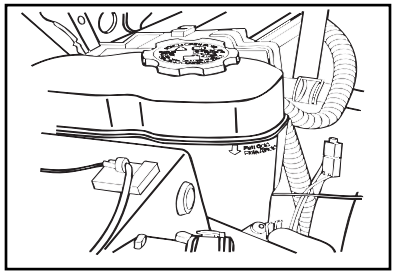
**⚠ CAUTION**

An electric cooling fan can start even if the engine is not running. Be careful around any underhood electric fan.

Check the coolant level at regular intervals, such as when refueling. The coolant level can be checked by looking at the see-through surge tank without having to remove the cap.

The vehicle must be on a level surface.

## Service and Maintenance



The level should be at or above the **FULL COLD** mark.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Steam and scalding liquids from a hot cooling system can blow out and burn you badly. Never turn the cap when the engine and cooling system are hot.

If the surge tank is empty, see "Engine Overheating" in Section 5 for the proper fill procedure.

If the coolant level is low, add a 50/50 mixture of water and DEX-COOL® coolant to bring the level to the proper mark.

Then replace the cap. Be sure the cap is tight.

See the Maintenance Schedule booklet to find out when the coolant must be replaced.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Under some conditions the ethylene glycol in engine coolant is combustible. To avoid being burned, **do not** spill coolant on the exhaust system or on hot engine parts. If you have any doubt, have this operation performed by a qualified technician.

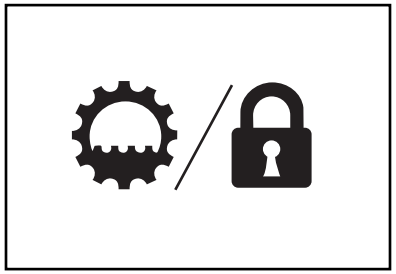
**NOTICE**

The surge tank cap is a pressure-type cap and must be tightly installed to prevent coolant loss and possible engine damage from overheating.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Used coolant should not be disposed of with regular trash.

Have the coolant changed by an authorized service center, familiar with the requirements of the law regarding used coolant disposal, to help protect the environment and your health.



### *Automatic Transmission Fluid*

It is not usually necessary to check the transmission fluid in your vehicle. Fluid loss may occur if the transmission is overheated or if there is a transmission leak.

If you suspect a small leak, check the fluid level using the procedure described in this section.

If a large amount of fluid is leaking from the transmission, have your vehicle serviced before driving the vehicle further.

If you need to have your vehicle towed, see "Towing" in Section 5 for vehicle towing information.

Change the fluid and filter at the intervals recommended in your Maintenance Schedule.

See the "Recommended Fluids and Lubricants" chart later in this section to determine what kind of fluid to use.

**NOTICE**

Damage caused by the use of any fluid that is not recommended is not covered by your new vehicle warranty.

### CHECKING THE FLUID LEVEL

**NOTICE**

Too much or too little fluid can damage your transmission.

**⚠ CAUTION**

When you add fluid to the automatic transmission, make sure not to overfill it. Overfilling will result in leakage on hot engine or exhaust system parts, and might start a fire.

**NOTICE**

Too little fluid could cause the transmission to overheat.

Check the fluid level carefully to be sure you get an accurate reading.

The vehicle must be on a level surface.

The engine must be running and the transmission must be in **P** (Park).

Then, before checking the fluid level, further prepare your vehicle as follows:

1. Set the parking brake.
2. With your foot on the brake pedal, move the shift lever through each gear range, pausing for about 3 seconds in each range. Then position the shift lever in **P** (Park).

   Do not release the brake pedal.
3. Run the engine at idle speed (500-800 rpm) for at least one minute.

   Slowly release the brake pedal.
4. To determine whether to proceed with the cold check procedure or the hot check procedure, following, press the trip/fuel information button located on the instrument panel to display the transmission temperature reading on the Driver Information Center.

   Make sure the engine is running when you check the transmission temperature using the Driver Information Center.

   See the following under "Driver Information Center" in Section 1 for more information:

   - Trip/Fuel Information Menu

     **TRANS TEMP** (transmission temperature)

AKENG44_Escalade Page 311 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



The fluid temperature ranges required for a cold check or a hot check are listed, following, under the cold check and hot check procedures.

If the displayed temperature reading is not within either of the required ranges, allow the vehicle to cool to the cold check procedure range, or operate the vehicle until the transmission temperature reading reaches the hot check procedure range.

5. Proceed with the appropriate fluid check procedure.

**Cold Check Procedure**

Perform this fluid check procedure when the transmission temperature is in the range of 27-32°C (80-90°F).

Perform a cold check only to determine whether the transmission has enough fluid to be operated safely until a hot check can be made.

The hot check procedure is the most accurate method to check the fluid level.

After a cold check, perform a hot check at the first opportunity, once the fluid reaches normal operating temperature.

1. Prepare your vehicle as previously described under "Checking the Fluid Level".
2. Locate the transmission fluid dipstick.

   See "Engine Compartment" earlier in this section to determine the location.
3. With the engine running at idle speed, lift the handle and remove the dipstick. Wipe it clean and reinsert it by pushing it down all the way.

## Service and Maintenance

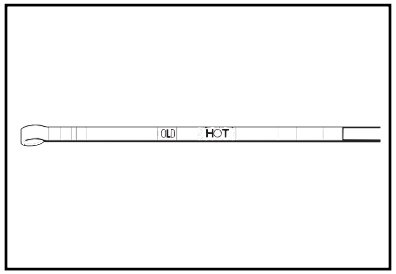
4. Wait for 3 seconds, remove the dipstick again and check the fluid level.

   Keep the dipstick pointed down to get an accurate reading.

   Check both sides and read the lower level.

5. Always recheck the fluid level. If inconsistent readings persist, check the transmission breather to be sure it is clean and unclogged. If readings are still inconsistent, see your dealer.

   If readings are consistent, continue with the procedure.




6. If the level is within the cold area, reinstall the dipstick. You may operate the transmission until the fluid is hot enough to perform a hot check.

   If the level is not within the cold area, add or drain fluid as necessary to bring the level into the middle of the cold cross-hatched area. Reinstall the dipstick. Then, operate the transmission until the fluid is hot enough to perform a hot check.

Note:

- When adding fluid, be careful not to overfill.

  Generally, less than 0.5 L (1 pint) of fluid is needed.
- When fluid is added, it may take 15 minutes or more before an accurate reading is obtained.
- When reinstalling the dipstick, make sure to flip the handle back down to lock the dipstick in place.

After a cold check, perform a hot check at the first opportunity, once the fluid reaches normal operating temperature.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 313 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



**Hot Check Procedure**

Perform this fluid check procedure when the transmission temperature is in the range of 71-93°C (160-200°F).

The hot check procedure is the most accurate method to check the fluid level.

After a cold check, perform a hot check at the first opportunity, once the fluid reaches normal operating temperature.

The fluid level rises as fluid temperature increases, so it is important to ensure the transmission temperature is within the proper range.

1. Prepare your vehicle as previously described under "Checking the Fluid Level".
2. Locate the transmission fluid dipstick.

   See "Engine Compartment" earlier in this section to determine the location.
3. With the engine running at idle speed, lift the handle and remove the dipstick. Wipe it clean and reinsert it by pushing it down all the way.
4. Wait for 3 seconds, remove the dipstick again and check the fluid level.

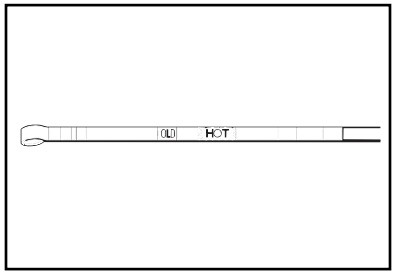
   Keep the dipstick pointed down to get an accurate reading.

   Check both sides and read the lower level.

## Service and Maintenance

5. Always recheck the fluid level. If inconsistent readings persist, check the transmission breather to be sure it is clean and unclogged. If readings are still inconsistent, see your dealer.

   If readings are consistent, continue with the procedure.




6. The level should be within the hot cross-hatched area.

   If the level is not within the hot cross-hatched area, add or drain fluid as necessary to bring the level into the middle of the hot cross-hatched area. Reinstall the dipstick.

Note:

- When adding fluid, be careful not to overfill.

  Generally, less than 0.5 L 1 pint) of fluid is needed.
- When fluid is added, it may take 15 minutes or more before an accurate reading is obtained.
- When reinstalling the dipstick, make sure to flip the handle back down to lock the dipstick in place.

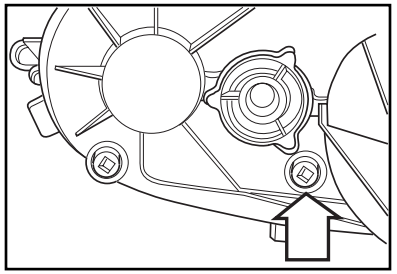
### *Transfer Case Lubricant*

Check the fluid at the intervals recommended in your Maintenance Schedule.

See the "Recommended Fluids and Lubricants" chart later in this section to determine what kind of fluid to use.

**To check the fluid level:**

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface and apply the parking brake.
2. Turn off the engine.



3. Check the level of the lubricant by removing the plug.

   Add lubricant, if needed, to bring the level up to the bottom of the filler plug hole.

   When reinstalling the plug, do not overtighten it.

### *Front Axle Lubricant*

It is not necessary to regularly check the fluid unless you suspect there is a leak in the system or you hear an unusual noise.

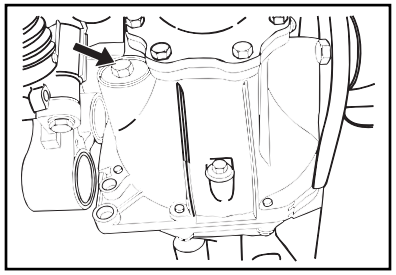
Fluid loss in this system could indicate a problem. Have the system inspected.

See the "Recommended Fluids and Lubricants" chart later in this section to determine what kind of fluid to use.

**To check the fluid level:**

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface and apply the parking brake.
2. Turn off the engine.

# Service and Maintenance



3. Check the level of the lubricant by removing the plug.
   - When the differential is cold, add lubricant, if needed, to bring the level up to 3.2 mm (1/8 inch) below the filler plug hole.
   - When the differential is warm, add lubricant, if needed, to bring the level up to the bottom of the filler plug hole.

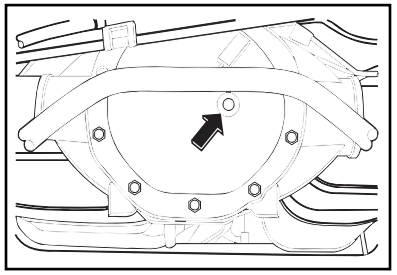
## *Rear Axle Lubricant*

It is not necessary to regularly check the fluid unless you suspect there is a leak in the system or you hear an unusual noise.

Fluid loss in this system could indicate a problem. Have the system inspected.

Axle assemblies are filled by volume of fluid rather than filled to reach a certain level. Readings will vary depending on how long the vehicle has been stationary. Remember that the rear axle assembly must be supported to get a true reading.

See the "Recommended Fluids and Lubricants" chart later in this section to determine what kind of fluid to use.

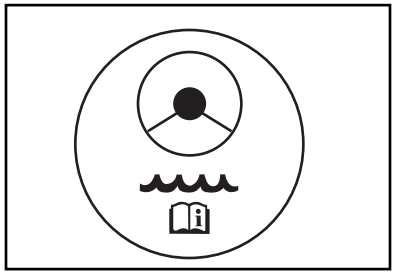


**To check the fluid level:**

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface and apply the parking brake.
2. Turn off the engine.
3. Check the level of the lubricant by removing the plug.

   The proper level is 1 mm to 19 mm below the bottom of the filler plug hole.

Add only enough fluid to bring the fluid up to the proper level.



## *Power Steering Fluid*

It is not necessary to regularly check the power steering fluid unless you suspect there is a leak in the system or you hear an unusual noise.

Fluid loss in this system could indicate a problem. Have the system inspected.

**To check the fluid level:**

1. Turn off the ignition and let the engine compartment cool down.
2. Wipe the cap and the top of the reservoir clean.
3. Unscrew the cap and wipe the dipstick clean. Replace the cap and completely tighten it.
4. Remove the cap again and check the fluid level on the dipstick.

   If the engine compartment is cool, the level should be at the **FULL COLD** mark.

If the level is low, add enough fluid to bring the level up to the proper area on the dipstick.

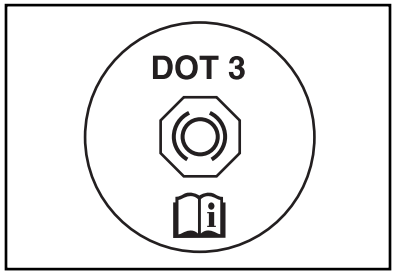
See the "Recommended Fluids and Lubricants" chart later in this section to determine what kind of fluid to use.

Add only enough fluid to bring the fluid level up to the mark.

### *NOTICE*

Using the wrong kind of fluid could damage system components. Always use the recommended fluid.

Damage caused by the use of any fluid that is not recommended is not covered by your new vehicle warranty.




### *Brake Master Cylinder Fluid*

There are two reasons why the brake fluid level in the master cylinder might go down. The first is that the brake fluid level decreases by an acceptable amount during normal brake lining wear. When new linings are put in, the fluid level goes back up. The other reason is that fluid may be leaking out of the brake system. If it is, you should have the brake system fixed.

It is not a good idea to "top off" your brake fluid. Adding brake fluid will not correct a leak. If you add fluid when the linings are worn, then there will be too much fluid when you get new brake linings. You should add (or remove) brake fluid, as necessary, only when work is done on the brake hydraulic system.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

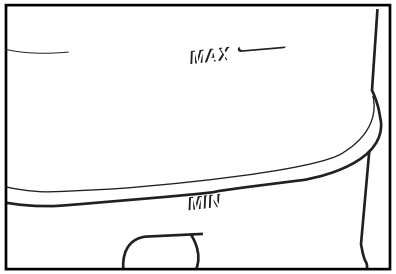
If there is too much brake fluid, it can spill on the engine. The fluid will burn if the engine is hot enough. You or others could be burned, and your vehicle could be damaged. Add brake fluid only when work is done on the brake hydraulic system.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Used brake fluid should not be disposed of with regular trash.

Have the brake fluid changed by an authorized service center, familiar with the requirements of the law regarding used brake fluid disposal, to help protect the environment and your health.

Check the master cylinder fluid level in the "see-through" reservoir at the intervals shown in the Maintenance Schedule.




The level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks.

If the brake fluid level is low, the brake system warning light will come on.

See "Brake System Warning Light" in Section 1.

If work has just been done on the brake hydraulic system and the fluid level is low, bring it up to the proper level using DOT-3 fluid from a sealed container.

To prevent contamination of the brake fluid, make sure the brake reservoir and cap are thoroughly clean before removing the cap.

See "Recommended Fluids and Lubricants" later in this section.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

With the wrong kind of fluid in your brake system, your brakes may not work well. This could cause a collision. Always use the proper brake fluid.

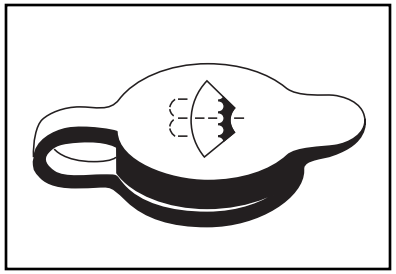
***NOTICE***

Using the wrong kind of fluid could severely damage system components. Always use the proper brake fluid.

***NOTICE***

Don't spill brake fluid on the vehicle's exterior surfaces. It can damage your paint. If you do, wash it off immediately.

# Service and Maintenance



## *Windshield Washer Fluid*

Use windshield washer solvent such as GM Optikleen® rather than water to prevent freezing and for better cleaning.

If the washer fluid reservoir is low on fluid, **WASHER FLUID LOW -- ADD FLUID** will appear on the Driver Information Center display.

See "Driver Information Center Messages" in Section 1 for more information.

1. Open the cap with the washer symbol on it.
2. Add washer fluid until the tank is full.

***NOTICE***

- When using a concentrated washer fluid, follow the manufacturer's instructions.
- Don't mix water with ready-to-use washer fluid. It could freeze and damage washer system components.
- When it's very cold outside, only fill the tank 3/4 full with fluid to allow for expansion.
- Don't use engine coolant for your windshield washer. It can damage your washer system and paint.

### *Battery*

Your vehicle is equipped with a battery that requires no periodic maintenance.

When it is time for a new battery, purchase one with same replacement number that is shown on the original battery's label.

- You will never have to add water to the battery.
- If your vehicle will not be driven for an extended period of time, disconnect the cable from the negative ("-") terminal of the battery or use a "trickle" charger to prevent discharge.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Batteries have acid that can burn you and gas that can explode. You can be hurt badly if you aren't careful. See the section titled "How to Use this Manual" for tips on how to work around a battery without getting hurt.

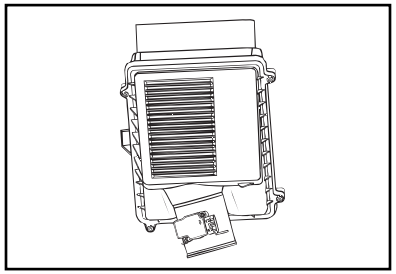
Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds which can cause cancer and reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling.

### *Air Cleaner/Filter*

A disposable air filter element is contained in the air cleaner.

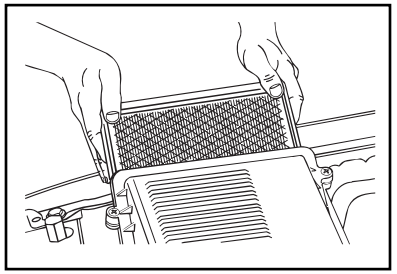
Inspect and change the filter at the intervals recommended in your Maintenance Schedule.

## Service and Maintenance



To remove and replace the air filter:

1. Loosen all the screws securing the cover.



2. Lift the cover and remove the air filter.

   Take care to dislodge as little dirt as possible.

3. Away from the vehicle's engine compartment, lightly shake the filter to release loose dust and dirt.

   Replace the filter if it remains caked with dirt.

4. Clean the air filter sealing surface and the filter housing.
5. Reverse the steps for installation of the new filter.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

The air filter must be placed properly unless you are doing repairs or maintenance work.

If the engine is started with the air filter improperly positioned, a backfire might occur and it may cause a fire due to the flame possibly created near the engine.

## ■ RECOMMENDED FLUIDS AND LUBRICANTS

| USAGE | FLUID / LUBRICANT |
|---|---|
| Engine Oil | To determine the needed oil quality and viscosity for your vehicle's engine, see "Engine Oil" earlier in this section. |
| Engine Coolant | 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and use only DEX-COOL® coolant. See "Engine Coolant" earlier in this section. |
| Hydraulic Brake System | Delco Supreme 11® brake fluid or equivalent DOT-3 brake fluid. |
| Windshield Washer Solvent | GM Optikleen® washer solvent. |
| Power Steering System | GM power steering fluid (GM part no. 89021184). |
| Automatic Transmission | DEXRON®-VI Automatic transmission fluid. |
| Key Lock Cylinders | Multi-purpose lubricant, Superlube® (GM part no. 12346241). |
| Chassis Lubrication | Chassis lubricant meeting requirements of NLGI grade 2, category LB or GC-LB (GM part no. 12377985). |
| Front and Rear Axle | SAE 75W-90 Synthetic axle lubricant (GM part no. 89021677) meeting requirements of GM 9986115. |
| Transfer Case | DEXRON®-VI Automatic transmission fluid. |
| Hood Hinges | Multi-purpose lubricant, Superlube® (GM part no. 12346241). |

## ■ RECOMMENDED FLUIDS AND LUBRICANTS (CONTINUED)

| USAGE | FLUID / LUBRICANT |
|---|---|
| Body Door Hinge Pins, Liftgate Hinge and Linkage, Folding Seat and Fuel Door Hinge | Multi-purpose lubricant, Superlube® (GM part no. 12346241). |
| Outer Liftgate Handle Pivot Points | Multi-purpose lubricant, Superlube® (GM part no. 12346241). |
| Weatherstrip Conditioning | Weatherstrip lubricant (GM part no. 3634770) or dielectric silicone grease (GM part no. 12345579). |
| Weatherstrip Squeaks | Synthetic grease with Teflon, Superlube® (GM part no. 12371287). |

## ■ TIRES

Your new vehicle comes with high-quality tires made by a leading tire manufacturer.

If you ever have questions about your tire warranty, see the warranty booklet included with your vehicle's Owner's Manual, or see your selling dealer or contact the tire manufacturer.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Poorly maintained and improperly used tires are dangerous.

- Do not overload your tires. Overloading the tires could cause them to overheat. You could have an air-out and a serious accident.

**⚠ *CAUTION (Continued)***

- Do not underinflate your tires. Underinflating the tires could cause them to overheat. You could have an air-out and a serious accident.
- Check the inflation pressure regularly. Tire pressure should be checked when the tires are cold.
- Do not overinflate your tires. Overinflated tires are more likely to be punctured.
- Worn, old tires can cause accidents. If the tread is badly worn, or if a tire has been damaged, replace it.
- If you will be driving at high speeds, see "High Speed Operation" later in this section for inflation pressure adjustment information.

### 22-Inch Tires

If your vehicle is equipped with the 22-inch P285/45R22 size tires, they are low-profile tires with a wide tread design. They are not recommended for off-road driving or commercial uses such as snow plowing.

See the following in Section 3 for more information:

- Off-Road Driving

### *INFLATION*

See the tire information label for your vehicle's tire inflation specifications.

To determine the location of your vehicle's tire information label, see "Vehicle Loading" in Section 3.

The label gives the correct inflation pressures for your tires when they're cold. Cold means your vehicle has been sitting for three hours or more - or, if driven at all, for no more than 1.5 km.

The air pressure indicated on the label as "cold" should be maintained for the tires to perform properly. However, do not overload your vehicle. See "Vehicle Loading" in Section 3.

Maintaining the cold tire pressure indicated on the tire information label leads to better fuel economy, longer tire life, a more comfortable ride and better overall driveability.

Check your tires at least once a month. Don't forget your spare tire.

**NOTICE**

Improper tire pressure promotes adverse effects in tire life and vehicle performance.

Excessively low inflation causes deflection of the tire and tire overheating which reduces tire strength and thus may damage the tires. It also causes tire overloading, abnormal wear, poor driveability, and poor fuel economy.

Excessively high inflation causes abnormal tire wear and poor ride which promotes vehicle damage due to impact from road bumps.

**To check and adjust tire pressure:**

You cannot tell if your tires are properly inflated simply by looking at them. Radial tires may look properly inflated even when they are underinflated.

For tire pressure inspection, the use of a quality pocket tire pressure gage is recommended.

Remove the valve cap from the tire valve stem.

Press the tire gage firmly onto the valve to get a pressure measurement.

If the pressure is low, add air until you reach the recommended pressure.

If you overfill the tire, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the center of the tire valve.

Recheck the tire pressure.

Be sure to put the valve caps back on the valve stems. They help prevent leaks by keeping out dirt and moisture.

**HIGH SPEED OPERATION**

***⚠ CAUTION***

Driving at high speeds, 160 km/h (100 mph) or higher, puts an additional strain on tires. Sustained high-speed driving causes excessive heat buildup and can cause sudden tire failure. You could crash and you or others could be killed.

Some high-speed rated tires require inflation pressure adjustment for high-speed operation. When speed limits and road conditions permit a vehicle to be driven at high speeds, make sure the tires are rated for high-speed operation, are in excellent condition, and are set to the correct cold tire inflation pressure for the vehicle load.

If the vehicle is equipped with P265/65R18 or P285/45R22 size tires and you will be driving at speeds of 160 km/h (100 mph) or faster, where it is legal, set the cold inflation pressure to 20 kPa (3 psi) above the recommended tire pressure shown on the tire information label. When you end this high-speed driving, return to the cold inflation pressure shown on the tire information label.

See "Vehicle Loading" in Section 3 for more information.

### *Inspection and Rotation*

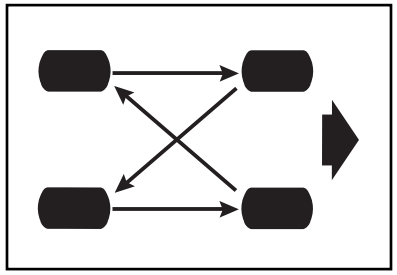
Check your tires and wheels regularly for unusual wear or damage.

Make sure the spare tire is secured properly.

See the following for more information:

- Changing a Flat Tire
  - Storing Tire and Jacking Equipment

To make your tires last longer, have them inspected and rotated at the mileages recommended in your Maintenance Schedule.



Follow the diagram above for the correct rotation pattern.

After rotation, adjust the front and rear tire pressures according to the tire information label.

Don't include the spare tire in your tire rotation.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 329 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



**⚠ CAUTION**

Rust or dirt on the wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make the wheel nuts become loose after a time. The wheel could come off and cause an accident. When you change a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from the places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In an emergency, you could use a cloth or a paper towel to do this; but be sure to use a scraper or wire brush later, if necessary, to get all the rust or dirt off.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Incorrect wheel nuts or improperly tightened wheel nuts can cause the wheel to become loose and even come off. This could lead to an accident. Be sure to use the correct wheel nuts.

**NOTICE**

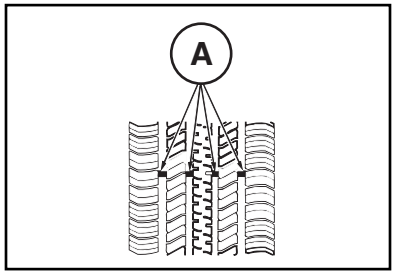
Improperly tightened wheel nuts can lead to brake pulsation and rotor damage. To avoid expensive brake repairs, evenly tighten the wheel nuts in the proper sequence and to the proper torque specification.

See "Specifications and Capacities" later in this Section for the proper wheel nut torque.

### *TIRE REPLACEMENT*

The rubber in your vehicle's tires degrades over time, even if the tires are not used. Various factors affect how quickly rubber degrades. Driving speeds, road conditions, temperatures, vehicle loading, and inflation pressure maintenance all affect how the tires on your vehicle age.

If maintained properly according to the maintenance schedule, the tires on your vehicle will most likely require replacement before they become degraded due to age.




Your tires have tread wear indicators Ⓐ. They tell you when a tire has 1.6 mm (1/16 inch) or less of tread left.

If you can see the tread wear indicators at three places around the tire, as in this picture, you need a new tire. Here are other things that mean you need to get a new tire:

- The tread or sidewall is cracked, cut or snagged deep enough to show cord or fabric.
- The tire has a bump, bulge or split.

Note: Some commercial truck tires may not have tread wear indicators.

The tire information label says what size tires you need.

To determine the location of your vehicle's tire information label, see "Vehicle Loading" in Section 3.

It is recommended that you replace all four tires at the same time.

Replacing fewer than four tires at one time can affect the braking and handling performance of your vehicle.

When replacing tires, you should use the same size, brand, load range and construction type as the original tires on the vehicle.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 331 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



**⚠ CAUTION**

Mixing brands, sizes or types of tires on your vehicle (other than the tire brand/size/type originally installed on your vehicle) could cause you to lose control while driving and may also damage the vehicle. Be sure to use the correct brand, size and type tires on all wheels.

Using a tire or wheel size other than the size originally installed on your vehicle may cause problems or damage to various vehicle systems, such as braking, ride and handling, and resistance to roll-over, and to electronic systems like antilock brakes, traction control, stability control, or rollover air bags.

**⚠ CAUTION**

If you add different sized wheels, and then if tires not recommended for those wheels are selected, your vehicle may not provide an acceptable level of performance and safety.

You may increase the chance that you will crash and suffer serious injury.

Only use GM specific wheel and tire systems developed for your vehicle, and have them properly installed by a GM certified technician.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Never drive faster than the speed for which your tires are rated, regardless of the legal speed limit. If you anticipate driving your vehicle at high speeds frequently and/or for prolonged periods of time, check with your vehicle/tire dealer for the proper type of tires to use for your specific driving and weather conditions.

**NOTICE**

Vehicles left standing for an extended period of time may be prone to exhibit flat spotting on the tires.

**⚠ CAUTION**

If you use bias-ply tires on your vehicle, the wheel rim flanges could develop cracks after many miles of driving. A tire and/or wheel could fail suddenly, causing a crash. Use only radial-ply tires with the wheels on your vehicle.

### *TIRE CHAINS*

Before using tire chains, check with the tire manufacturer to make sure that tire chains are compatible with the tires on your vehicle.

**NOTICE**

It is recommended that tire chains be used only on P265/70R17 size tires.

Use tire chains only where legal, and only when you must. Use chains that are the correct size for your tires. Install them on the rear tires as tightly as possible with the ends securely fastened.

Drive slowly and follow the chain manufacturer's instructions.

**NOTICE *(Continued)***

If you can hear the chains contacting your vehicle, stop and retighten them. If the contact continues, slow down until it stops. Driving too fast or spinning the wheels with chains on will damage your vehicle.

### *Spare Tire*

See "Spare Tire" in Section 5 for information.

## ■ WHEELS

### *Wheel Alignment and Tire Balancing*

If there is unusual tire wear or if the vehicle pulls one way or the other, the alignment may need to be reset.

If the vehicle vibrates when you are driving on a smooth road, the wheels may need to be balanced.

### *Wheel Replacement*

Replace any wheel that is bent, cracked, or badly rusted or corroded. If wheel nuts keep coming loose, the wheel, wheel nuts and wheel bolts should be replaced.

While some aluminum wheels can be repaired, other types of wheels should be replaced if they leak air.

Use only new, GM original equipment. See your dealer for assistance.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Using the wrong replacement parts could be dangerous. It could affect the braking and handling of your vehicle. You could lose control of the vehicle and you or others may be injured.

***NOTICE***

The wrong wheel can cause problems with bearing life, brake cooling, speedometer or odometer calibration, headlight aim, bumper height, vehicle ground clearance and tire or tire chain clearance to the body and chassis.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Putting a used wheel on the vehicle is dangerous.

You would not know how the wheel had been used or how many miles it had been driven.

The wheel could fail suddenly, causing a crash.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Rust or dirt on the wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make the wheel nuts become loose after a time. The wheel could come off and cause an accident. When you change a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from the places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In an emergency, you could use a cloth or a paper towel to do this; but be sure to use a scraper or wire brush later, if necessary, to get all the rust or dirt off.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Never use oil or grease on studs or nuts. If you do, the nuts might come loose. Your wheel could fall off, causing a serious accident.

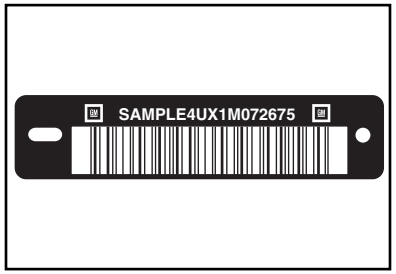
**⚠ CAUTION**

Incorrect wheel nuts or improperly tightened wheel nuts can cause the wheel to become loose and even come off. This could lead to an accident. Be sure to use the correct wheel nuts. If you have to replace them, be sure to get the right kind.

See "Specifications and Capacities" later in this Section for the proper wheel nut torque.

**NOTICE**

Improperly tightened wheel nuts can lead to brake pulsation and rotor damage. To avoid expensive brake repairs, evenly tighten the wheel nuts in the proper sequence and to the proper torque specification.




## ■ VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

This number is the legal identifier for your vehicle.

The vehicle identification number appears on a plate in the front corner of the instrument panel, on the driver's side. You can see it if you look through the windshield from outside your vehicle.

The number may also be found in one or more of the following locations:

- the chassis and/or underframe on the right side of the vehicle.
- Service Parts Identification Label
- Certification/Tire Label

The eighth character of the vehicle identification number is the engine code. This code will help you identify your engine, specifications and replacement parts.

## ■ SERVICE PARTS IDENTIFICATION LABEL

This label is located inside the glove box. It is very helpful if you ever need to order parts.

On this label, you will find the following information:

- the vehicle identification number
- the model designation
- paint information
- a list of all production options and special equipment

Do not remove this label from the vehicle.

## ■ FUSES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

The wiring circuits in your vehicle are protected from short circuits by a combination of fuses, circuit breakers and fusible thermal links. This greatly reduces the chance of fires caused by electrical problems.

If you ever have a problem on the road and don't have a spare fuse, you can borrow one that has the same amperage. Just pick some feature of your vehicle that you can get along without - like the radio or cigarette lighter - and use its fuse, if it is the correct amperage. Replace it as soon as you can.

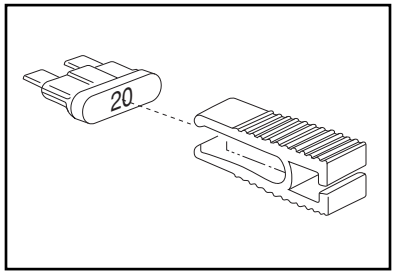
The instrument panel fuse block is on the left side wall of the instrument panel.

Remove the cover to access the fuse block.

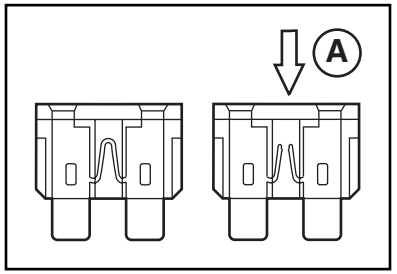
There is also a center instrument panel utility block located under the instrument panel, to the left of the steering column.

Additional fuses are located in the engine compartment.

To remove the fuse block cover, press the tabs on the cover, then lift the cover off.




You can remove fuses with a fuse extractor.



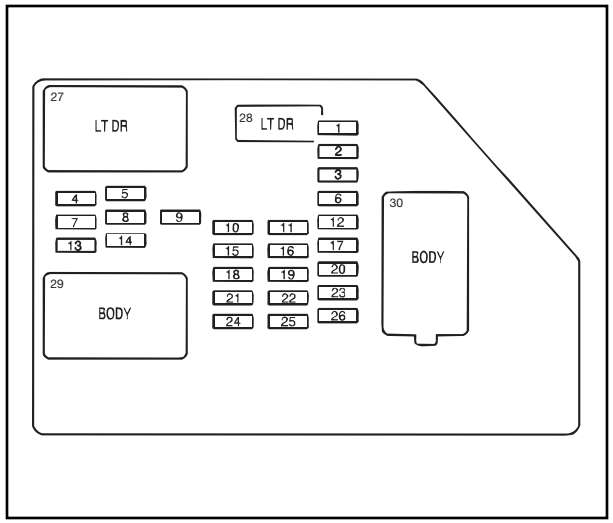

Look at the silver-colored band inside the fuse. If the band is broken or melted Ⓐ, replace the fuse. Be sure you replace a bad fuse with a new one of the correct size and rating.

**NOTICE**

Do not spill liquids on the vehicle's electrical components, or damage may occur.

Always reinstall the fuse block cover when you are done.

# Service and Maintenance




*Left Instrument Panel Fuse Block*

| Fuse | Circuits Protected |
|---|---|
| 1 | Rear Seats |
| 2 | Rear Cargo Area Power Outlet |
| 3 | Steering Wheel Controls Backlight |
| 4 | Driver Door Module |
| 5 | Dome Lights; Left Turn Signal |
| 6 | Left Turn Signal; Stoplight |
| 7 | Instrument Panel Back Lighting |
| 8 | Right Turn Signal; Stoplight |
| 9 | Passenger Door Module; Driver Unlock Function |
| 10 | Power Door Lock 2 (Unlock Function) |
| 11 | Power Door Lock 2 (Lock Function) |
| 12 | Stoplights; Center High-Mounted Stoplight |
| 13 | Rear Climate Control System |
| 14 | Power Mirrors |
| 15 | Body Control Module |
| 16 | Accessory Power Outlets |

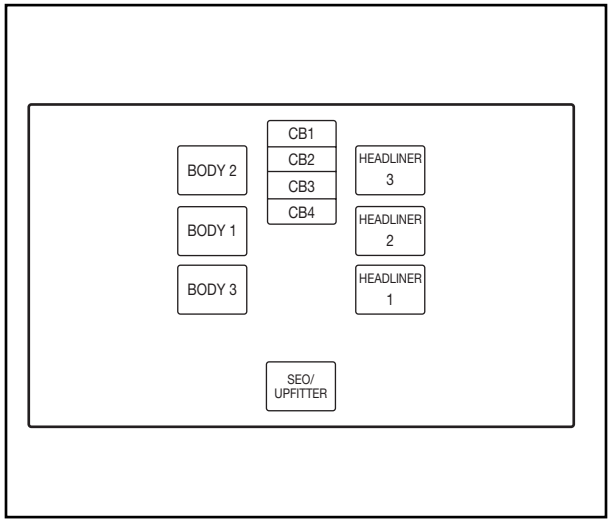
AKENG44_Escalade Page 339 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



### *Left Instrument Panel Fuse Block (Continued)*

| Fuse | Circuits Protected |
|---|---|
| 17 | Interior Lights |
| 18 | Power Door Lock 1 (Unlock Function) |
| 19 | Rear Seat Entertainment (If equipped) |
| 20 | Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist; Power Liftgate |
| 21 | Power Door Lock 1 (Lock Function) |
| 22 | Driver Information Center |
| 23 | Rear Wiper |
| 24 | Cooled Seats (If equipped) |
| 25 | Driver Seat Module; Remote Keyless Entry System |
| 26 | Driver Power Door Lock (Unlock Function) |

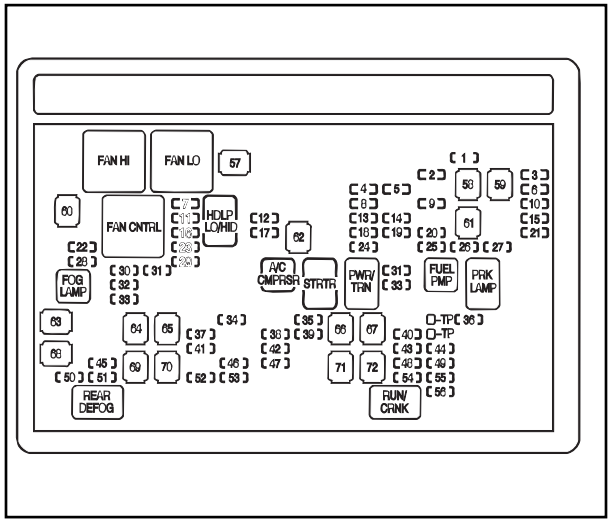
| Fuse | Circuits Protected |
|---|---|
| **Circuit Breaker** | |
| 27 | Left Side Power Window |
| **Harness Connector** | |
| 28 | Driver Door Harness Connector |
| 29 | Body Harness Connector |
| 30 | Body Harness Connector |




*Center Instrument Panel Utility Block*

| Fuse | Circuits Protected |
|---|---|
| BODY 2 | Body Wiring Connector 2 |
| BODY 1 | Body Wiring Connector 1 |
| BODY 3 | Body Wiring Connector 3 |

| Fuse | Circuits Protected |
|---|---|
| HEAD-LINER 3 | Headliner Wiring Connector 3 |
| HEAD-LINER 2 | Headliner Wiring Connector 2 |
| HEAD-LINER 1 | Headliner Wiring Connector 1 |
| SEO/ UPFITTER | Not Used |
| **Circuit Breaker** | **Usage** |
| CB1 | Right Power Window |
| CB2 | Passenger's Seat |
| CB3 | Driver's Seat |
| CB4 | Not Used |




## *Underhood Electrical Center*

| Name | Circuits Protected |
|---|---|
| 1 | Right Trailer Stop/Turn Signal Lights |
| 2 | Electronic Stability Suspension Control; Automatic Level Control Exhaust |
| 3 | Left Trailer Turn Signal Light |
| 4 | Engine Controls |
| 5 | Engine Control Module; Throttle Control |
| 6 | Not Used |
| 7 | Front Washer |
| 8 | Oxygen Sensors |
| 9 | Antilock Brake System 2 |
| 10 | Trailer Back-up Lights |
| 11 | Left Low-Beam Headlight |
| 12 | Engine Control Module (Battery) |
| 13 | Fuel Injectors; Ignition Coils (Right Side) |
| 14 | Transmission Control Module (Battery) |
| 15 | Back-up Lights |
| 16 | Right Low-Beam Headlight |

### *Underhood Electrical Center (Continued)*

| Name | Circuits Protected |
|---|---|
| 17 | Air Conditioning Compressor |
| 18 | Oxygen Sensors |
| 19 | Transmission Controls (Ignition) |
| 20 | Fuel Pump |
| 21 | Fuel System Control Module |
| 22 | Horn |
| 23 | Rear Washer |
| 24 | Fuel Injectors; Ignition Coils (Left Side) |
| 25 | Left Trailer Parking Lights |
| 26 | Left Parking Lights |
| 27 | Right Parking Lights; Right Trailer Parking Lights |
| 28 | Front Fog Lights |
| 29 | Horn |

| Name | Circuits Protected |
|---|---|
| 30 | Right High-Beam Headlight |
| 31 | Daytime Running Lights (If equipped) |
| 32 | Left High-Beam Headlight |
| 33 | Daytime Running Lights 2 (If equipped) |
| 34 | Sunroof (If equipped) |
| 35 | Key Ignition System; Theft Deterrent System |
| 36 | Windshield Wiper |
| 37 | Not Used |
| 38 | Electric Adjustable Pedals |
| 39 | Climate Controls (Battery) |
| 40 | Air Bag System (Ignition) |
| 41 | Amplifier |
| 42 | Sound System |

### *Underhood Electrical Center (Continued)*

| Name | Circuits Protected |
|---|---|
| 43 | Miscellaneous (Ignition); Cruise Control |
| 44 | Liftgate Release |
| 45 | Air Bag System (Battery) |
| 46 | Instrument Cluster |
| 47 | Rear Fog Lights; Trailer Turn Signal Lights |
| 48 | Auxiliary Climate Control (Ignition) |
| 49 | Center High-Mounted Stoplight |
| 50 | Rear Window Defogger |
| 51 | Heated Mirrors |
| 52 | Rear Fog Lights; Trailer Stoplights |
| 53 | Cigarette Lighter; Accessory Power Outlet |
| 54 | Automatic Level Control Compressor Relay |
| 55 | Climate Controls (Ignition) |

| Name | Circuits Protected |
|---|---|
| 56 | Engine Control Module; Secondary Fuel Pump (Ignition) |
| 57 | Cooling Fan 1 |
| 58 | Automatic Level Control Compressor |
| 59 | Not Used |
| 60 | Cooling Fan 2 |
| 61 | Antilock Brake System 1 |
| 62 | Starter |
| 63 | Stud 2 (Trailer Brakes) |
| 64 | Left Bussed Electrical Center 1 |
| 65 | Power Running Boards (If equipped) |
| 66 | Heated Windshield Washer System |
| 67 | Not Used |
| 68 | Stud 1 (Trailer Connector Battery Power) |
| 69 | Mid Bussed Electrical Center 1 |

### *Underhood Electrical Center (Continued)*

| Name | Circuits Protected |
|---|---|
| 70 | Climate Control Fan |
| 71 | Power Liftgate Module |
| 72 | Left Bussed Electrical Center 2 |
| **Relay** | **Usage** |
| FAN HI | Cooling Fan High Speed |
| FAN LO | Cooling Fan Low Speed |
| FAN CNTRL | Cooling Fan Control |
| HDLP LO/HID | Headlight Control |
| FOG LAMP | Front Fog Lights |
| A/C CMPRSR | Air Conditioning Compressor |

| Name | Circuits Protected |
|---|---|
| STRTR | Starter |
| PWR/ TRN | Powertrain |
| FUEL PMP | Fuel Pump |
| PRK LAMP | Parking Lights |
| REAR DEFOG | Rear Window Defogger |
| RUN/ CRANK | Switched Power |

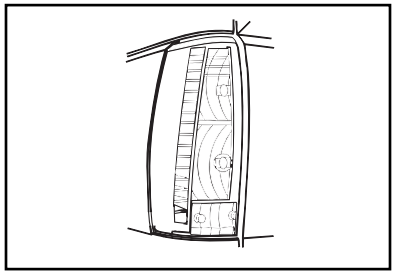
## ■ BULB REPLACEMENT

See your dealer for any bulb changing procedure not listed in this section.

**Halogen Bulbs**

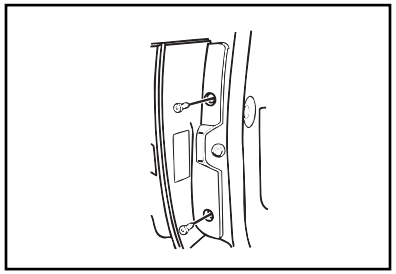
**⚠ CAUTION**

Halogen bulbs contain pressurized gas and may burst if dropped or scratched. You or others may be injured. Follow all instructions on the bulb package.



**Backup Lights/Rear Fog Lights**

1. Open the liftgate.



2. Remove the screws and pull out the light assembly.

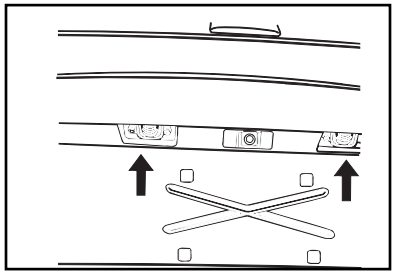
   Pull the light assembly straight rearward to disengage the pins on the assembly.

3. Press the tab (if equipped) and turn the socket counter-clockwise to remove it.

   Pull the bulb straight out to remove it from the socket.

4. Replace the bulb and reverse the steps for installation.

   Be sure to properly align the holes in the assembly to the round ends of the mounting pins.



**License lights**

1. Remove the two screws from each light assembly.
2. Rotate the bulb assembly and pull the assembly through the opening in the liftgate trim.
3. Turn the bulb socket counter-clockwise to remove it.

   Pull the bulb straight out to remove it from the socket.

4. Replace the bulb and reverse the steps for installation.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 347 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



## ■ REPLACEMENT BULB SPECIFICATIONS

See your dealer for any bulb not listed in this section.

Backup Lights/Rear Fog Lights .....7440
License lights .....W5W

## ■ SPECIFICATIONS AND CAPACITIES

### *Component Specifications*

**6.2 L V8 Engine**

| | |
|---|---|
| Type | V8 |
| VIN Code | 2 |
| Horsepower | 301 kW @ 5700 $min^{-1}$ |
| Engine Torque | 565 Nm @ 4300 $min^{-1}$ |
| Oil Filter | 89017524** PF48* |
| Air Cleaner/Filter | 15908916** A3086C* |
| Spark Plugs | 12609877** 41-985* (Gap 1.01 mm) (0.040 inches) |
| Wheel Nut Torque | 190 Nm (140 lb-ft) |

* AC Delco® part number

** GM part number

## *Capacities (Approximate)*

Fuel Tank.....98.4 L
Crankcase (Quantity With Filter)*†.....5.7 L
Transmission (Pan Removal and Filter Replacement)† .....5.7 L
Air Conditioning Refrigerant (R-134a).....‡
Transfer Case†.....1.4 L
Cooling System† .....16.7 L

* Change filter at every oil change.

† Recheck fluid level after filling.

‡ For the air conditioning system refrigerant charge amount, see the refrigerant caution label located under the hood. This information can also be found in the vehicle service manual.

## ■ FUEL CONSUMPTION AND EMISSIONS INFORMATION

Fuel Consumption

| | |
|---|---|
| Urban | 23.0 L/100 km |
| Extra-Urban | 12.3 L/100 km |
| Combined | 16.2 L/100 km |

Carbon Dioxide Emissions

| | |
|---|---|
| Urban | 541 g/km |
| Extra-Urban | 292 g/km |
| Combined | 383 g/km |

## ■ APPEARANCE CARE

**⚠ CAUTION**

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the safety belt webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

General Motors offers products specially designed to maintain the appearance and to help care for your vehicle.

See your dealer for more information.

### Wheels and Tires

**NOTICE**

To prevent damage to chrome-plated wheels and trim, always wash your vehicle after driving on roads treated with magnesium, calcium or sodium chloride.

**NOTICE**

When cleaning aluminum wheels, do not use strong soaps, chemicals, abrasive polishes/cleaners/brushes or cleaners that contain acid.

Do not use chrome polish on aluminum wheels.

The surface of the wheels could be damaged and the repairs would not be covered by your warranty.

To wash the wheels on your vehicle, use a clean, soft cloth dampened with water and a mild detergent. Rinse the wheels with clean water and dry them thoroughly.

Then, apply wax to the wheels, if desired.

**NOTICE**

Do not drive your vehicle through an automatic car wash that has silicone carbide tire cleaning brushes.

The wheels could be damaged and the repairs would not be covered by your warranty.

**NOTICE**

When using a petroleum-based tire dressing, always wipe of any overspray from the vehicle's painted surfaces.

Otherwise, the vehicle's paint finish and/or tires may be damaged.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 353 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM

# Section **5 - Problems on the Road**

**Jump Starting** ..... 354
**Towing** ..... 358
**Engine Overheating** ..... 359
Checking and Adding Coolant ..... 362
**Changing a Flat Tire** ..... 366
Changing the Flat Tire ..... 372
Storing Tire and Jacking Equipment ..... 377
Secondary Latch System ..... 383
Spare Tire ..... 387
**If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck** ..... 388
Rocking Your Vehicle ..... 388
Recovery Hooks ..... 389
**Data Collection and Event Data Recorders** ... 390

## ■ JUMP STARTING

If your battery has run down, you may use another vehicle with a 12-volt battery and some jumper cables to start your vehicle.

The other vehicle must have a 12-volt battery with a negative ground system.

**NOTICE**

If the other vehicle does not have a 12-volt battery with a negative ground system, both vehicles could be damaged.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Batteries have acid that can burn you and gas that can explode. You can be hurt badly if you aren't careful. See the section titled "How to Use this Manual" for tips on how to work around a battery without getting hurt.

Do not let battery fluid touch your skin. If you do get it in your eyes or on your skin, flush the place with water and get medical help immediately.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Every new GM vehicle uses a battery that requires no maintenance. However, if another battery has filler caps, be sure the right amount of fluid is there. If it is low, add water to make sure that there is no explosive gas present.

Do not use a match or flame near a vehicle's battery. If you need more light, use a flashlight.

**NOTICE**

Trying to start your vehicle by pushing or pulling it won't work and could even damage your vehicle.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 355 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



**To jump start your vehicle, follow these steps:**

**NOTICE**

Ignoring these steps could result in costly damage to your vehicle.

The repairs would not be covered by your warranty.

1. Get the vehicles close enough so the jumper cables can reach. Be sure the vehicles aren't touching each other.

**⚠ CAUTION**

To ensure that the vehicles do not roll, set the parking brake firmly on both vehicles involved in the jump starting procedure.

Shift an automatic transmission into **P** (Park) and a manual transmission into **N** (Neutral) before setting the parking brake.

2. Turn off the ignition on both vehicles. Turn off the radios and all lights that aren't needed.

   Unplug any accessories that are plugged into the cigarette lighter or the accessory power outlets.

**NOTICE**

If you leave the radio or other accessories on, they could be badly damaged.

The repairs would not be covered by your warranty.

**⚠ CAUTION**

An electric cooling fan can start even if the engine is not running. Be careful around any underhood electric fan.

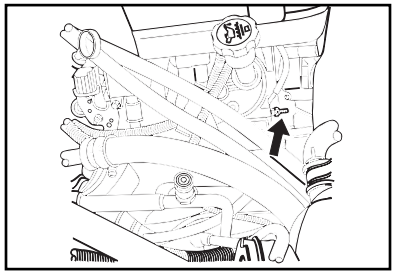
3. Now open the hood and locate the positive (+) and negative (-) battery terminals.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Fans or other moving engine parts can injure you badly. Keep your hands away from moving parts once the engine is running.

Your vehicle has remote positive (+) and negative (-) battery terminals.

The remote positive (+) terminal is located under a red plastic cover (if equipped). Open the cover to access the terminal.



The remote negative (-) terminal is a stud located near the front of the engine compartment where the negative battery cable attaches.

Always use the remote positive and remote negative terminals instead of the terminals on your vehicle's battery.

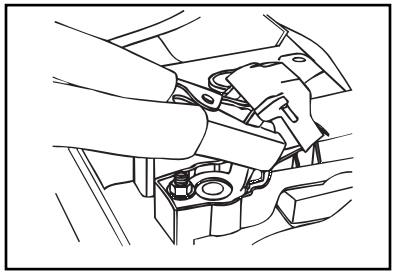
**⚠ CAUTION**

Check that the jumper cables don't have any loose or missing insulation. If they do, you could get a shock and the vehicles could be damaged.

**NOTICE**

Do not connect positive (+) to negative (-) or you will get a short that would damage the battery and possibly other parts.

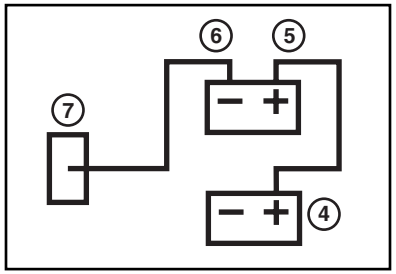
Do not connect the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal on the dead battery because this can cause sparks.



4. Connect the positive (+) (red) cable to the positive (+) terminal on the discharged battery. Use the remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one.
5. Don't let the other end touch metal, then connect it to the positive (+) terminal of the good battery.

   Use the remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one.
6. Now take the negative (-) (black) cable. First connect it to the good battery's negative (-) terminal. Use the remote negative (-) terminal if the vehicle has one. Don't let the other end touch metal yet.
7. Attach the other end of the negative cable to a heavy metal part on the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery, or to a remote negative (-) terminal if the vehicle has one.

   Do not connect the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal on the dead battery because this can cause sparks.




8. Start the vehicle with the good battery. Run the engine for a while.
9. Then try to start the other vehicle.

   If the engine does not start after a few tries, the vehicle may need service.

10. Remove the cables in reverse order to prevent electrical shorting.

    Replace the red remote positive (+) terminal cover (if equipped).

***NOTICE***

Damage to your vehicle may result from electrical shorting if jumper cables are connected or disconnected incorrectly. To prevent electrical shorting, take care that the cables do not touch each other or any other metal.

Remove the cables in the correct order.

The repairs would not be covered by your warranty.

## ■ TOWING

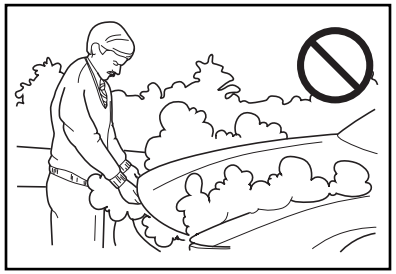
See your dealer or a professional towing service if you need to have your vehicle towed.

Tow the vehicle on a platform trailer.

Also, see "Recreational Vehicle Towing" in Section 3.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 359 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM





## ■ ENGINE OVERHEATING

**⚠ CAUTION**

Steam from an overheated engine can burn you badly. Stay away from the engine if you see or hear steam coming from it.

The engine coolant temperature gage shows the engine coolant temperature. If the pointer reaches the shaded warning area of the gage, the engine is too hot!

An overheat warning message may appear in the driver information center display.

See "Driver Information Center Messages" in Section 1 for more information.

If you see or hear steam coming from the engine, stop and turn the engine off. Do not open the hood until the engine has cooled down.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Continued operation of an overheated engine may result in a fire and the possibility of personal injury and/or severe vehicle damage.

See "Overheat Protection Mode" later in this section for information.

## Problems on the Road

If you get the overheat warning with no sign of steam:

1. Turn off your air conditioner and turn the heater on to maximum heat and maximum fan speed.
2. If you're in a traffic jam, shift to **N** (Neutral).
3. Pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Allow the engine to idle for a few minutes.

If the coolant temperature gage still shows an overheated condition, pull over, stop and park your vehicle right away.

If there is still no sign of steam, run the engine at idle speed for about five minutes while you are parked.

If the overheat warning continues, turn off the engine and get everyone out of the vehicle right away.

See "Overheat Protection Mode" later in this section for information.

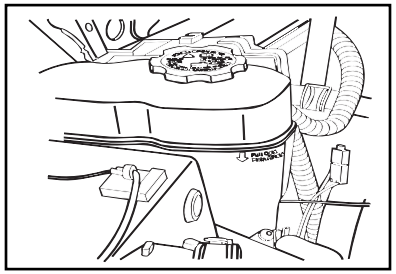
**⚠ *CAUTION***

An electric cooling fan can start even if the engine is not running. Be careful around any underhood electric fan.

If the coolant in the surge tank has been boiling, do not touch it until it has cooled down.

The vehicle should be parked on a level surface.

The coolant level can be checked by looking at the see-through surge tank without having to remove the cap.



The level should be at or above the **FULL COLD** mark.

If the coolant level is low, there may be a leak in the cooling system.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Engine parts may be very hot. Do not touch them.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Do not run the engine if there is a leak. All the coolant could leak out and cause an engine fire. You could be burned.

***NOTICE***

Running your engine without coolant could cause engine damage that wouldn't be covered by your warranty.

See "Overheat Protection Mode" later in this section for information.

If the coolant is leaking, have it fixed immediately.

If the coolant is not leaking and the engine is overheated, the engine cooling fans should be running. If not, the fans must be serviced.

**Overheat Protection Mode**

If you still have the overheat warning, the engine has a feature whereby it alternates firing groups of cylinders to minimize engine damage and to allow you to drive your vehicle to the nearest service center. You will notice a significant loss in power and engine performance.

A warning light and/or the coolant temperature gage will indicate an overheat condition.

The following message will appear in the Driver Information Center display:

- **ENGINE POWER IS REDUCED**

See "Driver Information Center Messages" in Section 1 for more information.

Avoid driving an extended distance and/or towing a trailer while driving in this mode.

**NOTICE**

After driving in this mode, allow the engine to cool before attempting any repairs. Once cool, repair the cause of coolant loss and change the oil.

## *Checking and Adding Coolant*

**⚠ CAUTION**

Steam and scalding liquids from a hot cooling system can blow out and burn you badly. Never turn the cap when the engine and cooling system are hot.

The coolant level can be checked by looking at the see-through surge tank without having to remove the cap.

The vehicle must be on a level surface.

The level should be at or above the **FULL COLD** mark.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Adding only plain water or a liquid other than the recommended coolant can be dangerous. The engine could overheat, but you would not get the overheat warning. The engine could catch on fire and you or others could be burned.

***NOTICE***

If there is too much water in the coolant mixture, the liquid could freeze and crack the engine and other vehicle parts.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

The cooling system in your vehicle is designed to use DEX-COOL coolant.

Do not substitute any liquids for the proper coolant mixture. The engine could catch on fire and you or others could be burned.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Under some conditions the ethylene glycol in engine coolant is combustible. To avoid being burned, **do not** spill coolant on the exhaust system or on hot engine parts. If you have any doubt, have this operation performed by a qualified technician.

***NOTICE***

Do not substitute any liquids for the proper coolant mixture. Otherwise, premature corrosion may result and the engine coolant will require change sooner.

Damage caused by the use of any coolant that is not recommended is not covered by your new vehicle warranty.

***NOTICE***

The engine has a specific radiator fill procedure.

Failure to follow this procedure may result in the engine overheating and in severe engine damage.

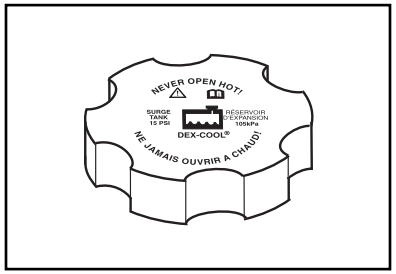
# Problems on the Road

**IF COOLANT IS VISIBLE IN THE SURGE TANK:**

If coolant is visible in the tank but the level is not up to the **FULL COLD** mark, wait a while for the engine to cool, then add a 50/50 mixture of clean water and DEX-COOL® coolant at the coolant surge tank. See "Engine Coolant" in the "Service and Maintenance" section.

**IF NO COOLANT IS VISIBLE IN THE SURGE TANK:**

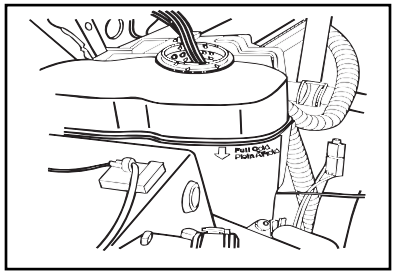
Add a 50/50 mixture of clean water and DEX-COOL® coolant at the coolant surge tank.




**Here's how to add coolant to the surge tank:**

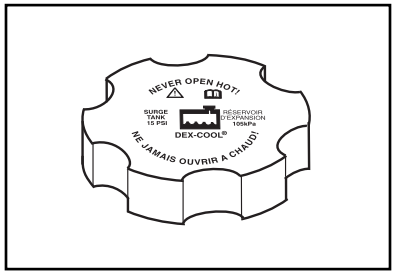
1. To remove the cap when the cooling system is no longer hot, turn it slowly one full turn to the left and then stop.

   If you hear a "hiss", wait for that to stop. The "hiss" means there is still some pressure left. Then continue to slowly turn the cap and remove it.



2. Fill the reservoir with the proper mixture of coolant and clean water up to the **FULL COLD** mark.
3. With the pressure cap off, start the engine and let it run until you can feel that the upper radiator hose is getting hot (watch out for the engine cooling fan).

4. If the level in the surge tank has dropped, add more of the coolant mixture to bring the level back up to the proper mark.




5. Then replace the cap. Be sure the cap is tight.

When the engine and cooling system have cooled down, check the coolant level again. If the coolant is not at the proper level, repeat steps 1 through 5 again. If the coolant is not at the proper level when the system cools down again, have the vehicle serviced.

**NOTICE**

The surge tank cap is a pressure-type cap and must be tightly installed to prevent coolant loss and possible engine damage from overheating.

## ■ CHANGING A FLAT TIRE

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Lifting a vehicle and getting under it to do maintenance or repairs is dangerous without the appropriate safety equipment and training.

The jack provided with your vehicle is designed only for changing a flat tire and should only be used for that purpose.

If the jack is used for anything else, you or others could be badly injured or killed.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Avoid further tire and wheel damage by driving very slowly to a level place to change your tire. Turn on your hazard warning flashers.

Changing a tire can cause injury. The vehicle can slip off the jack and injure you or other people.

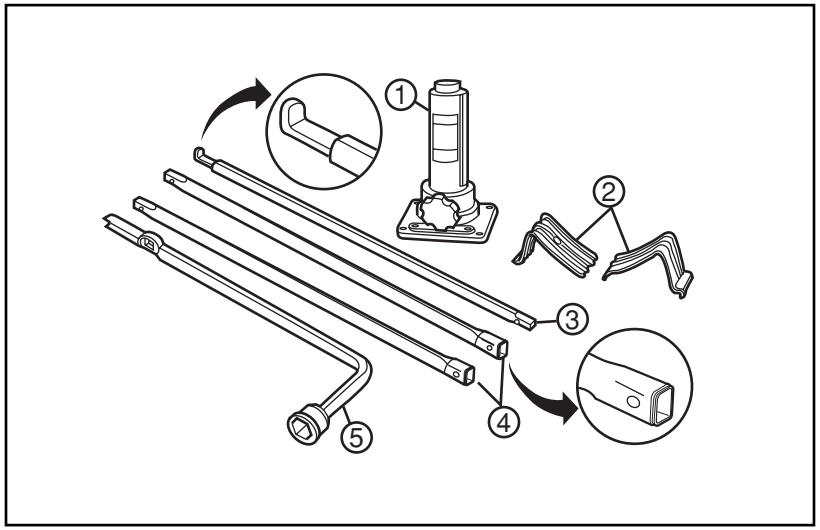
**⚠ *CAUTION (Continued)***

To help prevent the vehicle from moving while changing the flat tire:

- Set the parking brake firmly.
- Shift into **P** (Park).
- Turn off the engine.
- Do not start the vehicle while it is raised on the jack.
- Before jacking, have all passengers get out of the vehicle.
- Put blocks at the front and rear of the tire furthest away from the one being changed.

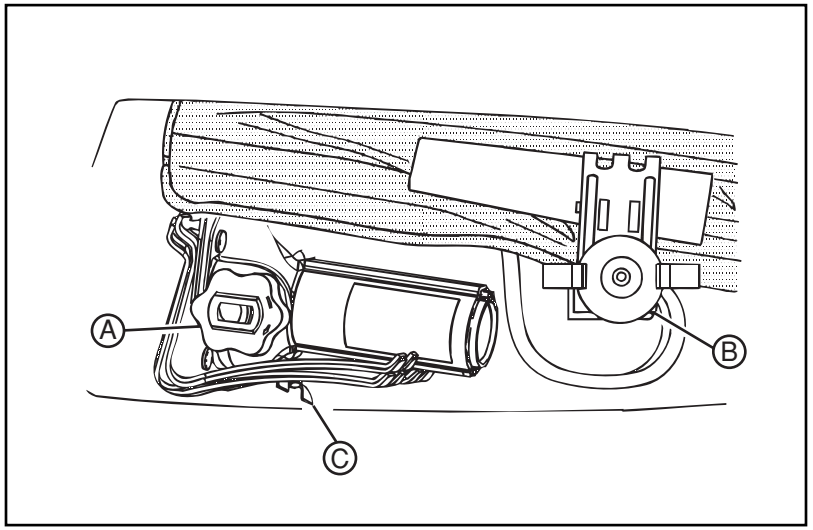
The equipment is stored under the storage tray in the left trim panel of the rear area.

1. Jack
2. Wheel Blocks




3. Jack Handle
4. Jack Handle Extensions
5. Wheel Wrench

# Problems on the Road




Remove the tray to access the jacking equipment.

1. Pull up on the storage tray to remove it and access the jacking equipment.

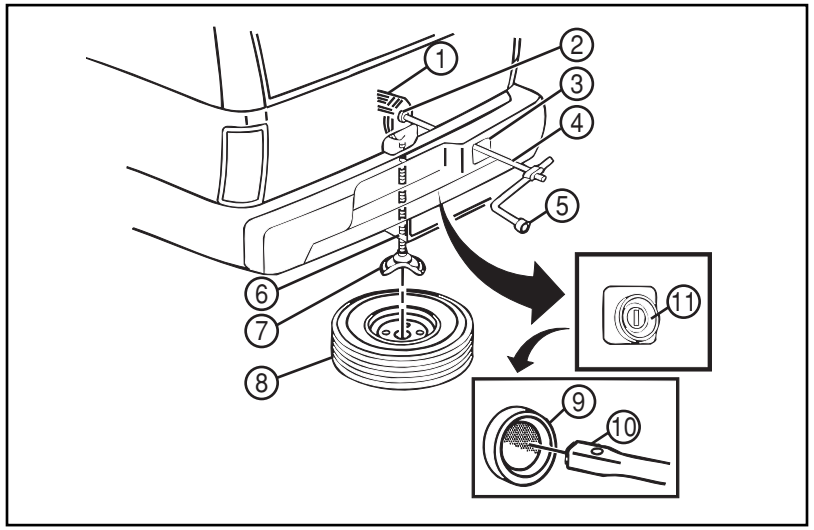
   The pull cup on the tray is marked with a jack symbol.

2. Turn the wing nut Ⓑ counterclockwise to release the tool kit storage bag.
3. Remove the jack tools from the storage bag.
   - Wheel Wrench
   - Jack Handle
   - Jack Handle Extensions
4. Turn the knob Ⓐ on the jack counterclockwise to release the jack and wheel blocks.
5. Turn the wing nut Ⓒ counterclockwise to release the wheel blocks and wheel block retainer.

The spare tire is attached to the tire carrier underneath the vehicle.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 369 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM





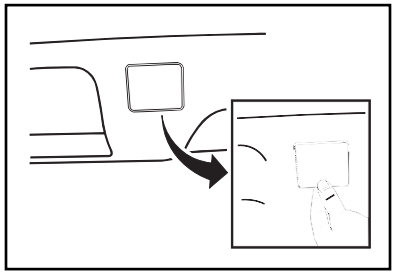

The following are the main components of the spare tire carrier:

1. Hoist Assembly
2. Hoist Shaft
3. Hoist Shaft Access Cover/Hole
4. Jack Handle Extensions
5. Wheel Wrench
6. Hoist Cable
7. Tire/Wheel Retainer
8. Spare Tire/Flat Tire (with valve stem pointed down)
9. Hoist Shaft Access Hole
10. Hoist End of Extension Tool
11. Tire Lock

**⚠ CAUTION**

To help avoid personal injury and property damage, never remove or restow a tire from/to a stowage position under the vehicle while the vehicle is supported by a jack. Always tighten the tire fully against the underside of the vehicle when restowing.

To access the spare tire hoist cover, you must first remove the hitch cover.

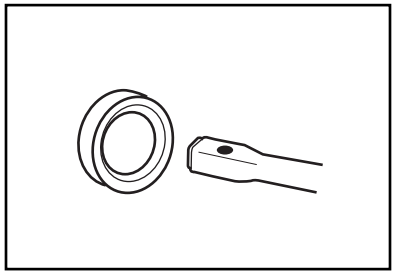


Rotate the two fasteners, located at the bottom of the cover, counterclockwise. Then, pull the cover down and rotate it toward you to remove it.

Open the spare tire lock cover on the bumper and use the ignition key to remove the lock.

To remove the spare tire lock, insert the key and turn it. Then pull the lock straight out.

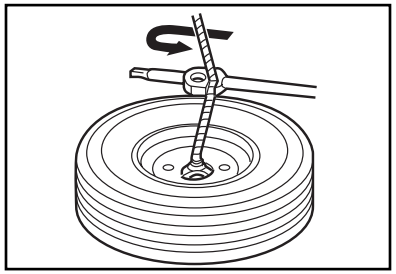
Assemble the wheel wrench and the two jack handle extensions.



Insert the hoist end (open end) of the extension into the hole in the bumper. Connect the extension onto the hoist shaft.

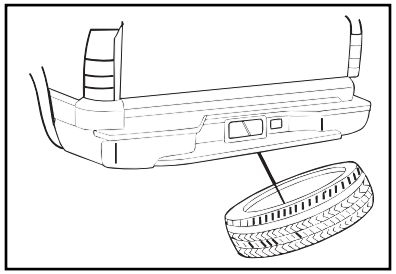
Do not use the chisel end of the wheel wrench.

Turn the wheel wrench counterclockwise to lower the spare tire. Keep turning the wheel wrench until the spare tire can be pulled out from under the vehicle.

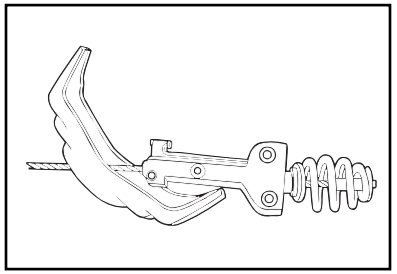


Use the hook on the wheel wrench to pull the hoist cable towards you so that you can reach the spare tire.

If the spare tire does not lower to the ground, the secondary latch is engaged. See "Secondary Latch System" later in this section for the proper release procedure.



When the tire has been completely lowered, tilt the tire to access the tire/wheel retainer.



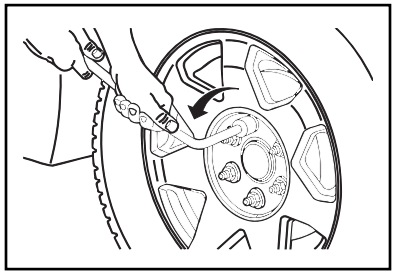
Press and hold the latch and slide the tire/wheel retainer upward on the guide pin to separate the retainer from the guide pin.

Once the tire/wheel retainer is separated from the guide pin, tilt the retainer at the end of the cable and pull the retainer and the guide pin through the wheel opening.

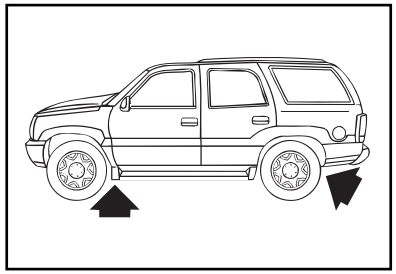
# Problems on the Road

## *Changing the Flat Tire*

If the wheel of the flat tire has a center cap, use the chisel end of the wrench to carefully pry it off.



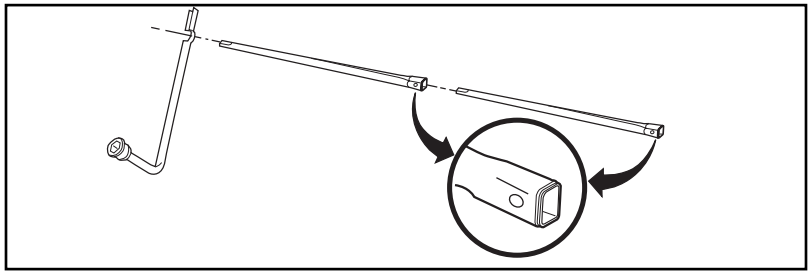
Loosen the wheel nuts with the wheel wrench. Do not remove them yet.



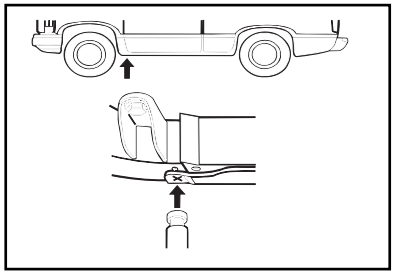
Place the jack under the jacking point nearest the tire you want to change.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Raising your vehicle with the jack improperly positioned can damage the vehicle or may allow the vehicle to fall off the jack. To avoid personal injury and vehicle damage, be sure to fit the jack lift head into the proper location before raising the vehicle.



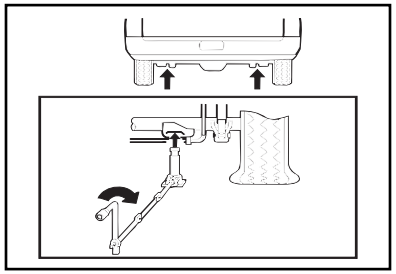
Assemble the jack handle extensions (as needed) and the jack handle.



If the flat tire is on the rear of the vehicle, you will need to attach both jack handle extensions.

Attach the jack handle to the jack.

## Problems on the Road



If the flat tire is on a front wheel, place the jack to the rear of the flat tire, on the area of the frame where the sections overlap.

If the flat tire is on a rear wheel, place the jack to the rear of the flat tire, on the rear axle jacking pad.

Attach the wheel wrench to the jack handle or extension and turn it clockwise to raise the jack head to the jacking point.

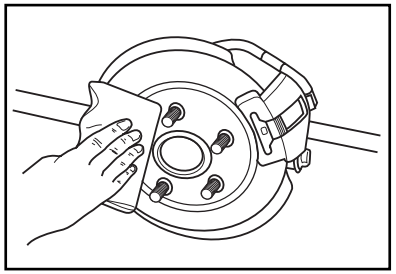
Raise the jack until the jack head fits firmly into place.

Then raise the vehicle off the ground until there is room for the spare tire to fit.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Getting under a vehicle when it is jacked up is dangerous. If the vehicle slips off the jack, you could be badly injured or killed. Never get under a vehicle when it is supported only by a jack.

Remove the wheel nuts and take off the tire.



Remove any dirt or rust from the wheel bolts, mounting surfaces and spare wheel.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 375 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



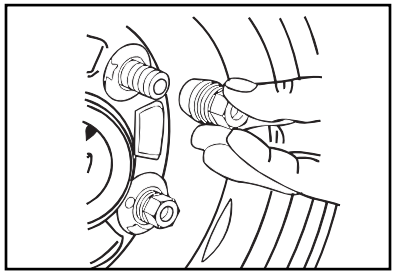
**⚠ CAUTION**

Rust or dirt on the wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make the wheel nuts become loose after a time. The wheel could come off and cause an accident. When you change a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from the places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In an emergency, you could use a cloth or a paper towel to do this; but be sure to use a scraper or wire brush later, if necessary, to get all the rust or dirt off.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Never use oil or grease on studs, nuts or bolts. If you do, the nuts or bolts might come loose. Your wheel could fall off, causing a serious accident.

Place the spare tire on the wheel mounting surface.

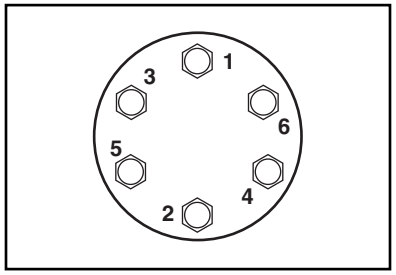


Install the wheel nuts with the rounded end toward the wheel and tighten by hand until the wheel is held against the hub.

Turn the wheel wrench counterclockwise to lower the vehicle.

Lower the jack completely.

## Problems on the Road




Tighten the nuts firmly with a wrench in the pattern shown above.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Incorrect wheel nuts or improperly tightened wheel nuts can cause the wheel to become loose and even come off. This could lead to an accident. Be sure to use the correct wheel nuts. If you have to replace them, be sure to get the right kind. Stop somewhere as soon as you can and have the nuts tightened with a torque wrench to the proper torque.

See "Specifications and Capacities" in Section 4 for the proper wheel nut torque.

**NOTICE**

Improperly tightened wheel nuts can lead to brake pulsation and rotor damage. To avoid expensive brake repairs, evenly tighten the wheel nuts in the proper sequence and to the proper torque specification.

After installing the spare tire on your vehicle, stop as soon as possible to make sure the tire is correctly inflated.

When you reinstall the full-size wheel and tire, you must also reinstall the center cap, if equipped. Place the cap on the wheel and tap it into place until it sits flush with the wheel. The cap can only go on one way. Be sure to line up the tab on the center cap with the indentation on the wheel.

Restow tire and jacking equipment in reverse order as removal. Be sure the tire valve is pointed down and to the rear.

See "Storing Tire and Jacking Equipment" later in this section for more information.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Storing a jack, a tire or other equipment in the passenger's compartment of the vehicle could cause injury. In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment could strike someone. Store all these in the proper place.

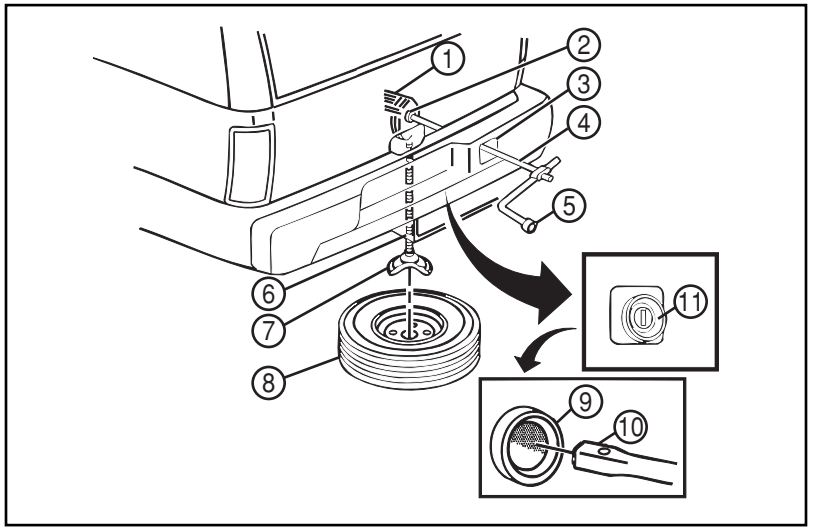
## *Storing Tire and Jacking Equipment*

**Tire Storage**

**NOTICE**

Storing an aluminum wheel with a flat tire under the vehicle for an extended period of time with the valve pointing up could damage the wheel. Always stow the wheel with the valve stem pointing down and have the tire repaired as soon as possible.

## Problems on the Road




The following are the main components of the spare tire carrier:

1. Hoist Assembly
2. Hoist Shaft
3. Hoist Shaft Access Cover/Hole
4. Jack Handle Extensions
5. Wheel Wrench
6. Hoist Cable
7. Tire/Wheel Retainer
8. Spare Tire/Flat Tire (with valve stem pointed down)
9. Hoist Shaft Access Hole
10. Hoist End of Extension Tool
11. Tire Lock

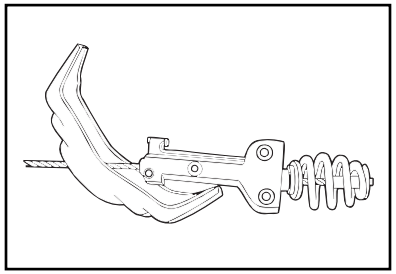
AKENG44_Escalade Page 379 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



To restow the tire under the vehicle in the spare tire carrier, do the following:

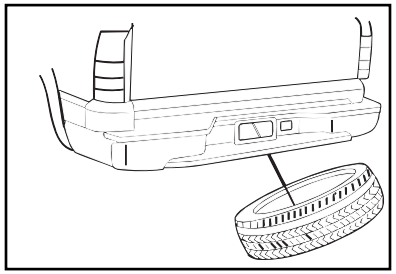
1. Place the tire on the ground near the rear of the vehicle.

   Be sure the tire valve stem faces down and to the rear.



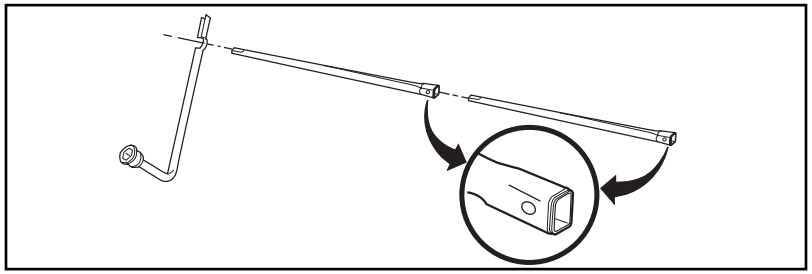
2. Separate the tire/wheel retainer at the end of the hoist cable from the guide pin.

   - Press and hold the latch and slide the tire/wheel retainer upward on the guide pin to separate the retainer from the guide pin.

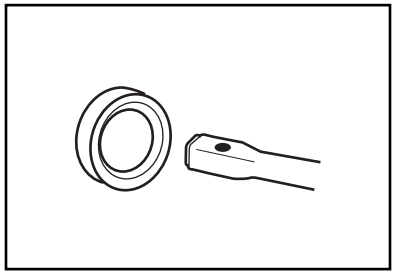


3. Once the tire/wheel retainer is separated from the guide pin, pull the guide pin through the center of the wheel. Then, tilt the retainer and pull it through the wheel opening.

## Problems on the Road



4. Assemble the wheel wrench and the two jack handle extensions.



5. Insert the hoist end (open end) of the extension into the hole in the bumper. Connect the extension onto the hoist shaft.

   Do not use the chisel end of the wheel wrench.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 381 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM

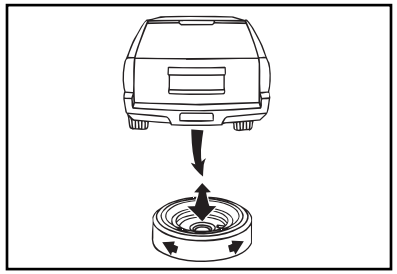


6. Turn the wheel wrench clockwise to raise the tire off the ground.

   Make sure the retainer is fully seated across the underside of the wheel and centered in the wheel opening.

7. Keep turning the wheel wrench until the tire is against the underside of the vehicle.

8. When the tire is raised against the underside of the vehicle, continue turning the wrench until you hear two clicks or feel it skip twice. The spare tire hoist can not be overtightened.



9. Try to move the tire with your hands to be sure that it is secured in place.

   If the tire moves, use the wheel wrench to tighten the cable.

10. Reinstall the lock.
11. Reinstall the access hole cover.
12. Reinstall the hitch cover.

# Problems on the Road

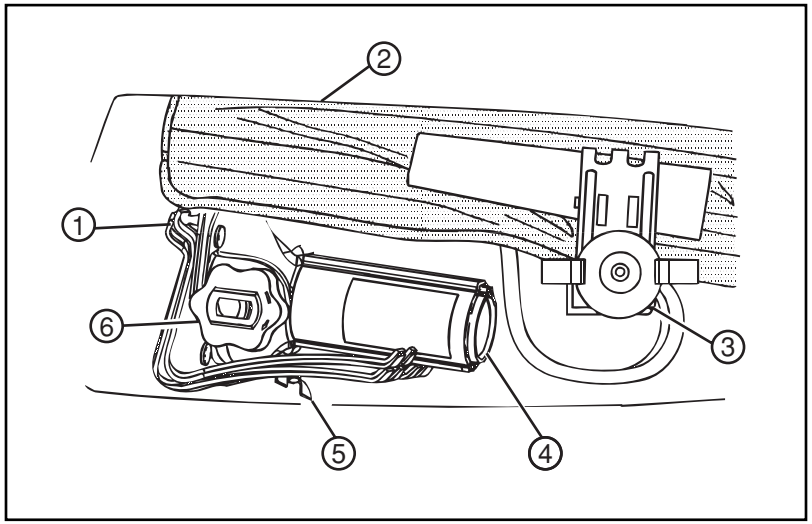
### Jacking Equipment Storage

**⚠ CAUTION**

Storing a jack, a tire or other equipment in the passenger's compartment of the vehicle could cause injury. In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment could strike someone. Store all these in the proper place.

The equipment is stored under the storage tray in the left trim panel of the rear area.

1. Wheel Blocks
2. Tool Kit




3. Wing Nut Retaining Storage Bag
4. Jack
5. Wing Nut Retaining Wheel Blocks
6. Jack Knob

AKENG44_Escalade Page 383 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



Restow the jacking equipment in the proper storage areas.

1. Return the equipment to the storage bag.
   - Wheel Wrench
   - Jack Handle
   - Jack Handle Extensions
2. Assemble the wheel blocks and the jack together with the wing nut.
3. Restow the wheel blocks and the jack in the left trim panel in the rear of the vehicle.

   Be sure to position the holes in the base of the jack onto the pin in the mounting bracket.
4. Turn the knob clockwise to secure the jack tightly in the mounting bracket.
5. Use the retaining bracket to fasten the tool storage bag on the stud in the storage compartment.
6. Turn the wing nut clockwise to secure the storage bag.
7. Reinstall the storage tray.

## *Secondary Latch System*

The secondary latch is designed to stop the spare tire from suddenly falling off the vehicle.

In order for the secondary latch to work, the tire must be stowed with the valve stem pointing down.

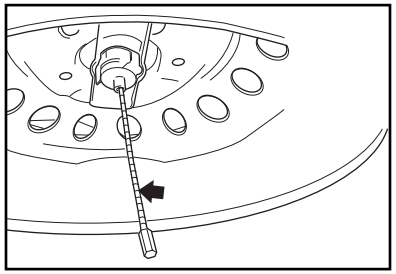
**⚠ *CAUTION***

Before beginning the procedure, read all the instructions. Failure to read and follow the instructions could damage the hoist assembly and you or others could get hurt.

Perform the following procedure to release the secondary latch:

1. Check under the vehicle to see if the cable is visible.

## Problems on the Road



2. If the cable is not visible, proceed to step 4.

   If the cable is visible, tighten the cable by turning the wheel wrench clockwise until it clicks or skips twice.

   The cable cannot be overtightened.

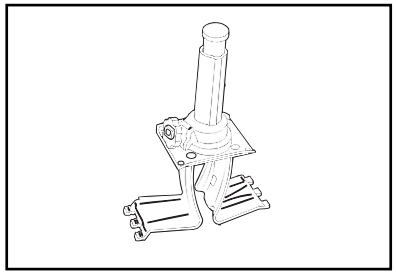
   Loosen the cable by turning the wheel wrench counterclockwise three or four turns.

   Tighten and loosen the cable at least two times.

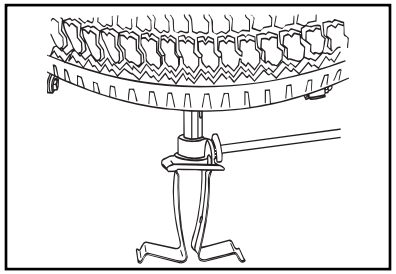
   If the tire lowers to the ground, continue with Step 12 of this procedure.

   If the tire does not lower to the ground, continue with this procedure.

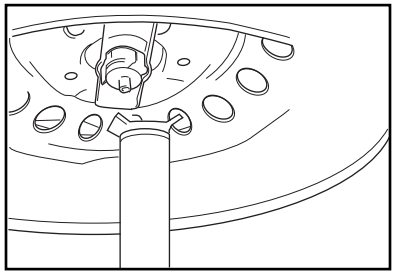
3. Turn the wrench counterclockwise until approximately 15 cm of cable is exposed.



4. Stand the wheel blocks on their shortest end, with the backs facing each other.
5. Set the bottom edge of the jack on the wheel blocks, separating them so that the jack is balanced securely.



6. Attach the jack handle, extension and wheel wrench to the jack.



Place the jack (with the wheel blocks) under the vehicle towards the front of the rear bumper.

7. Center the jack lift point under the center of the spare tire.
8. Turn the wrench clockwise to raise the jack until it lifts the end fitting.
9. Continue raising the jack until the spare tire stops moving up and is held firmly in place.

   The secondary latch should release.

   The spare tire is now balancing on the jack.
10. Lower the jack by turning the wrench counterclockwise.

    Keep lowering the jack until the spare tire slides off the jack or is hanging by the cable.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

If the spare tire does not slide off the jack completely, make sure no one is behind you or on either side of you when you pull the jack out from under the spare. Someone standing too close during the procedure could be injured by the jack.

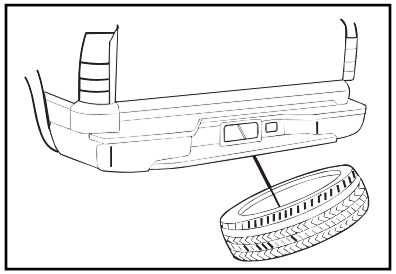
## Problems on the Road

11. Disconnect the handle from the jack and carefully remove the jack.

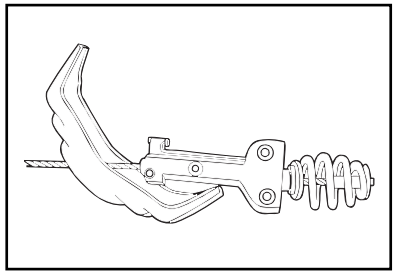
    Use one hand to push against the spare while firmly pulling the jack out from under the spare tire with the other hand.

12. If the spare tire is hanging from the cable:

    - Insert the hoist handle, extension and wheel wrench into the hoist shaft hole in the bumper.
    - Turn the wheel wrench counterclockwise to lower the spare tire. Keep turning the wheel wrench until the spare tire can be pulled out from under the vehicle.



- When the tire has been completely lowered, tilt the tire to access the tire/wheel retainer.



- Press and hold the latch and slide the tire/wheel retainer upward on the guide pin to separate the retainer from the guide pin.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 387 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



- Once the tire/wheel retainer is separated from the guide pin, tilt the retainer at the end of the cable and pull the retainer and the guide pin through the wheel opening.

13. If the cable is hanging under the vehicle, turn the wheel wrench in the hoist shaft hole in the bumper clockwise to raise the cable back up.

    Have the hoist assembly inspected as soon as possible. A spare or flat tire cannot be stored using the hoist assembly until the hoist assembly has been repaired or replaced.

## *Spare Tire*

Although the spare tire was fully inflated when your vehicle was new, it can lose air after a time.

Check the inflation pressure regularly.

See the tire information label for the proper tire inflation specifications.

To determine the location of your vehicle's tire information label, see "Vehicle Loading" in Section 3.

Have a damaged or flat road tire repaired as soon as you can.

The spare tire is made to be driven at speeds up to 112 km/h (70 mph).

Of course it is best to replace your spare with a road tire as soon as you can. Your spare will last longer and be in good shape in case you need to use it again.

Do not mix tires and wheels of different sizes because they will not fit. Keep the spare tire and wheel together.

## ■ IF YOUR VEHICLE GETS STUCK

If your vehicle gets stuck in sand, mud, ice or snow, you will need to spin the wheels.

Do not, however, spin the wheels too fast.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

If you let your tires spin at high speed, they could explode. You or others could be injured. Also, the transmission or other parts of the vehicle could overheat and cause an engine fire or other damage.

If the vehicle gets stuck, spin the wheels as little as possible. Do not spin the wheels above 55 km/h (35 mph), as shown on the speedometer.

**NOTICE**

Spinning the wheels can destroy parts of the vehicle, including the tires.

Spinning the wheels too fast while shifting the transmission back and forth could destroy the transmission.

For information about using tire chains on your vehicle, see "Tire Chains" under "Tires" in Section 4.

### *Rocking Your Vehicle*

To free your vehicle when it is stuck:

1. Turn the steering wheel left and right to clear the area around the front wheels.
2. Press the Stabilitrak button to turn the system off.

   See "Stabilitrak System" in Section 1 for information on the Stabilitrak system.

3. Shift the transmission back and forth between **R** (Reverse) and a forward gear, spinning the wheels as little as possible.

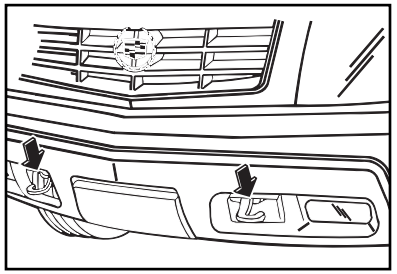
   Wait until the wheels stop spinning before shifting gears.

   Release the accelerator pedal while you shift and press it lightly when in gear.

The rocking motion may free the vehicle.

If it does not, you may need to have the vehicle towed out.

Also, see "Recovery Hooks".



### *Recovery Hooks*

Your vehicle has front recovery hooks.

You may use them to pull the vehicle out if it is stuck in sand, mud, snow, etc.

**⚠ *CAUTION***

Always pull the vehicle straight out. Never pull on the hooks at a sideways angle.

***NOTICE***

Never use the hooks for towing your vehicle. The vehicle could be damaged and the repairs would not be covered by your warranty.

## ■ DATA COLLECTION AND EVENT DATA RECORDERS

Your vehicle has computer modules that monitor and control vehicle systems and performance. These modules may record and store this information for future use.

Stored information may be used to help diagnose and repair malfunctions. It can also be used to improve driving safety and crash performance.

Some modules may also record data about how you operate the vehicle, such as the rate of fuel consumption or average vehicle speed.

These modules may also retain the owner's personal preferences, such as radio pre-sets, seat positions and temperature settings.

The event data recorder in your vehicle is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems.

During a crash, your vehicle may record information about the condition of the vehicle and how it was operated, and how the various safety systems performed.

Data is recorded only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs.

In most cases, data is recorded for only about 30 seconds.

Special equipment is needed to retrieve this data.

Law enforcement agencies or others may have equipment that can retrieve the information if they have access to the vehicle or to the device that stores the data.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 391 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



While no personal data is recorded by the event data recorder, law enforcement agencies or others may combine the data stored by your vehicle with the personal information routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

GM will only access this information with the consent of the vehicle owner or lessee, in response to an official request of police or similar government office, as part of GM's defense of litigation, or as required by law.

Data that GM collects or receives may also be used for GM research needs or may be made available to others for research purposes, where a need is shown and the data is not tied to a specific vehicle or vehicle owner.

Additional information from the navigation system may also be recorded and stored. See the following list.

- Addresses
- Destinations
- Telephone numbers
- Other trip information

See the separate navigation system manual for instructions on deleting stored information.

Some vehicles use radio frequency identification technology for features such as tire pressure monitoring and keyless access systems. This technology does not use or record personal information or link to any other system containing this type of information.

AKENG44_Escalade Page 392 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM

AKENG44_Escalade Page 393 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



## *A*

Accelerator - Adjustable Accelerator Pedal .....242
Accelerator -
Adjustable Accelerator Pedal Control .....24
Accessories .....289
Accessories - Retained Accessory Power .....154
Accessory Power Outlet .....84, 338
Air - Air Cleaner/Filter ..... 299, 321, 348
Air Bag .....194
Air Bag - Passenger Air Bag On/Off Indicator .....207
Air Bag - Passenger Sensing System .....201
Air Bag - Warning Light .....35, 201
Air Conditioning - A/C Compressor Button .....98
Air Conditioning - Automatic Dual Zone Climate
Control System .....24, 92
Air Conditioning -
Automatic Rear Air Conditioning/Heating .....100
Air Conditioning - Climate Control System .....92
Air Conditioning - Refrigerant .....349
Air Outlets .....24, 103
Air Outlets - Selector .....96, 102
All-Wheel Drive ..... 250
All-Wheel Drive - Driving Guidelines
For All-Wheel Drive Vehicles ..... 250
Antenna ..... 110
Antilock Brakes - Warning Light ..... 31
Appearance Care ..... 351
Armrest - Center Console ..... 151
Armrest - Rear Seat Armrest ..... 151
Ashtray ..... 153
Audio .....104, 342
Audio - Antenna ..... 110
Audio - Anti-Theft Feature ..... 109
Audio - Rear Seat Audio ..... 106
Audio -
Steering Wheel Audio Controls .....24, 108, 113
Automatic Headlight System ..... 88
Automatic Level Control ..... 270
Axle - Front Axle Lubricant ..... 315
Axle - Locking Rear Axle ..... 266
Axle - Maximum Front and Rear Axle Weights .. 273
Axle - Rear Axle Lubricant ..... 316

# Index


### *B*

Battery .....299, 321
Battery - Charging System Light .....29
Battery - Electric Power Management .....159
Battery - Jump Starting .....354
Battery - Remote Negative Battery Terminal .....299
Battery - Remote Positive Battery Terminal .....299
Battery - Rundown Protection .....154
Battery - Voltage .....46
Belts - Lap/Shoulder Belt .....186
Belts - Replacing Safety Belts .....191
Belts - Safety Belt Extension .....191
Belts - Safety Belt Pretensioners .....194
Belts - Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy .....192
Belts - Safety Belts .....6, 184
Belts - Shoulder Belt Comfort Guides .....189
Belts - Shoulder Belt Height Adjuster .....189
Brake System Warning Light .....30
Brakes .....266
Brakes - Adjustable Brake Pedal .....242
Brakes - Adjustable Brake Pedal Control .....24
Brakes - Adjustment .....268
Brakes - Antilock Brakes Warning Light .....31
Brakes - Brake Assist .....270
Brakes - Brake Fluid Reservoir .....299
Brakes - Disc Brake Wear Indicators .....267
Brakes - Dynamic Rear Proportioning .....268
Brakes - Fluid .....318
Brakes - Parking Brake .....269
Brakes - Pedal Travel .....268
Brakes - Trailer Brakes .....281
Brakes - Warning Light .....30
Break-In - New Vehicle Break-In Period .....227
Bulbs - Replacement .....345
Bulbs - Replacement Specifications .....347

### *C*

Capacities .....348, 349
Carbon Dioxide - Fuel Consumption and Emissions Information .....350
Cargo - Certification Label .....273
Cargo - Luggage Carrier .....149
Cargo - Maximum Front and Rear Axle Weights .....273

AKENG44_Escalade Page 395 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



## *C (Continued)*

Cargo - Rear Area Storage .....145
Cargo - Rear Cargo Area .....138
Cargo - Tire and Loading Information Label .....273
Cargo - Vehicle Loading .....14, 272
Cautions - Exhaust Warnings .....12
Cautions - Important Safety Precautions ..... 6-20
Chains - Tire Chains .....332
Chains - Trailer Towing Safety Chains .....281
Charging System - Warning Light .....29
Children - Anchors for Child Restraints with Lower Attaching Points and Top Tether .....217
Children - Child Restraint Top Strap .....218
Children - Child Restraints .....208
Children - Older Children .....215
Children - Securing a Child Restraint with Lower Attaching Points and Top Strap .....222
Chimes - Chime Volume Adjustment .....49, 58
Circuit Breakers .....336
Climate Control - A/C Compressor Button .....98
Climate Control - Air Outlet Selector .....96, 102
Climate Control - Automatic Dual Zone Climate Control System .....24, 92
Climate Control - Automatic Rear Air Conditioning/Heating .....100
Climate Control - Fan Speed Selector .....95, 101
Climate Control - Operating Tips .....102
Climate Control - Recirculation .....97
Climate Control System .....92
Clock .....24, 78, 104
Compartment - Glove Box .....24, 151
Components - Component Specifications .....348
Compressor - A/C Compressor Button .....98
Console - Center Console .....151
Controls - Dash-Mounted Controls .....24
Controls - Mounted on Steering Wheel/Column 111
Coolant .....306, 323
Coolant - Checking and Adding Coolant .....362
Coolant - Coolant Temperature Gage .....26
Coolant - Engine Coolant Reservoir .....17, 349
Coolant - Engine Coolant Surge Tank .....299
Cruise Control .....121
Cruise Control - Buttons .....24, 113

# Index

## *C (Continued)*

Cruise Control - Indicator Light .....37
Cupholders .....152
Customization - Feature Customization .....49

## *D*

Dash - Instrument Cluster ..... 24, 26, 343
Dash-Mounted Instruments and Controls .....24
Data Collection .....390
Defogger - Rear Window ..... 103, 343, 344
Defrosting .....97
Dipstick - Automatic Transmission Dipstick .....299
Display - Driver Information Center .....28
Displays - Display in English .....49
Displays - Language Selection .....49, 51
Dome Lights - Override Button .....24, 90
Doors .....134
Doors - Anti-lockout Feature .....135
Doors - Automatic Door Locks .....49, 52
Doors - Automatic Door Unlocks .....49, 53
Doors - Delayed Locking ..... 49, 56, 136
Doors - Liftgate .....141, 233
Doors - Manual Door Locks .....134
Doors - Power Door Locks ..... 135
Doors - Rear Door Security Locks ..... 137
Driver Information Center ..... 39, 339
Driver Information Center - Buttons .....24, 40, 78
Driver Information Center - Display ..... 28
Driver Information Center - Fuel Range ..... 43
Driver Information Center - Fuel Used ..... 44
Driver Information Center - Messages ..... 65
Driver Information Center - Personalization Button ..... 41
Driver Information Center - Timer ..... 44
Driver Information Center - Trip/Fuel Information Menu ..... 42
Driver Information Center - Vehicle Information Menu ..... 45, 71
Driving - Driving Guidelines For All-Wheel Drive Vehicles ..... 250
Driving - Driving in Mud, Sand, Snow or Ice ..... 261
Driving - In Water ..... 262
Driving - Loading Your Vehicle for Off-Road Driving ..... 253
Driving - New Vehicle Break-In Period ..... 227

# Index

## *D (Continued)*

Driving - Off-Road Driving .....251
Driving - Off-Road Driving on Hills .....14, 256
Dual Zone Climate Control System - Automatic .....24, 92
Dynamic Rear Proportioning .....268

## *E*

Electric Power Management .....159
Electrical - Center Instrument Panel Utility Block 340
Electrical - Engine Compartment Fuse Block .....299
Electrical - Fuses and Circuit Breakers .....336
Electrical - Left Instrument Panel Fuse Block .....338
Electrical - Retained Accessory Power .....154
Electrical - Underhood Electrical Center .....341
Electrical Accessories - Power Outlet .....84, 338
Emissions - Fuel Consumption and Emissions Information .....350
Engine - Checking and Adding Coolant .....362
Engine - Cold Weather Starting .....241
Engine - Coolant .....306, 323
Engine - Coolant Temperature Gage .....26
Engine - Engine Block Heater .....242
Engine - Engine Compartment .....17, 298
Engine - Engine Coolant Reservoir .....17, 349
Engine - Engine Coolant Surge Tank .....299
Engine - Engine Cooling Fan .....299
Engine - Engine Flooding .....241
Engine - Engine Oil .....300, 323, 349
Engine - Engine Oil Dipstick .....299
Engine - Engine Oil Fill Cap .....299
Engine - Engine Oil Life .....45
Engine - Engine Starting .....239
Engine - Engine Starting Problems .....240
Engine - Engine Torque .....348
Engine - Failure to Start .....240
Engine - Horsepower .....348
Engine - Oil Pressure Warning Light .....28
Engine - Overheat Protection Mode .....67, 362
Engine - Overheating .....5, 359
English Units .....46
Ethanol - Ethanol (E-85) Fuel .....291
Event Data Recorders .....390
Exhaust - Exhaust Warnings .....12

# Index

## *F*

Fan - Fan Speed Selector .....95, 101
Features - Feature Customization .....49
Filter - Air Cleaner/Filter ..... 299, 321, 348
Flooding - Engine Flooding .....241
Fluid - Automatic Transmission Fluid .....309
Fluid - Brake Master Cylinder Fluid .....318
Fluid - Checking and Adding Coolant .....362
Fluid - Engine Coolant .....306, 323
Fluid - Engine Oil .....300, 323
Fluid - Heated Washer Fluid .....69, 119
Fluid - Power Steering Fluid .....317
Fluid - Windshield Washer Fluid .....320
Fluids - Recommended Fluids and Lubricants ....323
Fog - Fog Lamp Light .....38
Fog - Front Fog Lights ..... 89, 342, 344
Fog - Rear Fog Lamp Light .....38
Fog - Rear Fog Lights .....90
Four-Wheel Drive - Driving in Mud, Sand, Snow or Ice .....261
Four-Wheel Drive - Driving in Water .....262
Four-Wheel Drive - Loading Your Vehicle for Off-Road Driving .....253
Four-Wheel Drive - Off-Road Driving ..... 251
Four-Wheel Drive - Off-Road Driving on Hills 14, 256
Four-Wheel Drive - Transfer Case Lubricant ..... 315
Frequency - Transmitter Frequency Approval Code ..... 236
Front Fog Lights .....89, 342, 344
Fuel ..... 289
Fuel - Average Fuel Economy ..... 43
Fuel - Ethanol (E-85) Fuel ..... 291
Fuel - Filling the Tank ..... 294
Fuel - Fuel Consumption and Emissions Information ..... 350
Fuel - Fuel Gage ..... 27
Fuel - Fuel Range ..... 43
Fuel - Fuel Tank ..... 349
Fuel - Fuel Used ..... 44
Fuses ..... 336
Fuses - Center Instrument Panel Utility Block ..... 340
Fuses - Engine Compartment Fuse Block ..... 299
Fuses - Left Instrument Panel Fuse Block ..... 338
Fuses - Underhood Electrical Center ..... 341

AKENG44_Escalade Page 399 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM




### G

Gage - Coolant Temperature Gage .....26
Gage - Fuel Gage .....27
Gas - Filling the Fuel Tank .....294
Gears - Gearshift Lever .....24, 114
Glove Box .....24, 151
Guidelines - Maintenance Guidelines .....288

### H

Harness - Trailer Wiring Harness .....283
Hauling - Tow/Haul Button .....24
Hauling - Tow/Haul Mode .....278
Hazard Warning Flasher .....114
Hazard Warning Flasher - Control .....24
Headlights - High Beam Indicator .....26
Headlights - High/Low Beam Control .....116
Heater - Engine Block Heater .....242
Heating - Automatic Dual Zone Climate Control System .....24, 92
Heating - Automatic Rear Air Conditioning/Heating .....100
Heating - Climate Control System .....92
High Beam - Indicator .....26
Hills - Parking a Trailer on Hills .....282
Hitches .....279
Hood - Release .....297
Hooks - Recovery Hooks .....389
Horn .....24, 113, 342
Horsepower - Engine Horsepower .....348

### I

Identification - Vehicle Identification Number .....335
Ignition - Ignition Switch .....113, 236
Illuminated Entry/Exit System .....91
Indicator - Headlight High Beam .....26
Indicator - Passenger Air Bag On/Off Indicator .....207
Indicator - Turn Signal .....26
Inflatable Restraint System .....194
Inflatable Restraint System - Passenger Air Bag On/Off Indicator .....207
Inflatable Restraint System - Passenger Sensing System .....201
Inflatable Restraint System - Warning Light .....35, 201
Inflation - Tire and Loading Information Label .....273

# Index


### *I (Continued)*

Inflation - Tire Inflation .....326
Information - Vehicle Information Menu .....45, 71
Instrument Cluster ..... 24, 26, 343
Instrument Panel -
Instrument Panel Switchbank .....24, 91
Instrument Panel - Light Dimmer .....89
Instruments - Dash-Mounted Instruments .....24
Interior Lights - Override Button .....24, 90

### *J*

Jacking .....5, 18, 366, 372
Jacking - Storing Tire and Jacking Equipment ....377

### *K*

Keyless Entry - Battery Replacement .....235
Keyless Entry - Feedback ..... 49, 54, 55
Keyless Entry - Transmitter .....232
Keyless Entry -
Transmitter Frequency Approval Code .....236
Keyless Entry - Transmitter Range .....234
Keys .....227
Keys - Remote Keyless Entry .....232
Keys - Transmitter Range .....234

### *L*

Label - Certification Label ..... 273
Label -
Maximum Front and Rear Axle Weights ..... 273
Label - Service Parts Identification Label ..... 335
Label - Tire and Loading Information Label ..... 273
Label - Vehicle Identification Number ..... 335
Language - Display in English ..... 49
Language - Language Selection .....49, 51
Leveling - Automatic Level Control ..... 270
Lever - Gearshift Lever .....24, 114
Lever - Multifunction Lever .....24, 111, 115
Liftgate .....141, 233
Light - Air Bag Light .....35, 201
Light - Antilock Brake System Warning Light ..... 31
Light - Brake System Warning Light ..... 30
Light - Charging System Light ..... 29
Light - Cruise Control Light ..... 37
Light - Engine Oil Pressure Warning Light ..... 28
Light - Fog Lamp Light ..... 38
Light - Lights On Reminder Light ..... 38

AKENG44_Escalade Page 401 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



## *L (Continued)*

Light - Malfunction Indicator Light .....32
Light - Passenger Safety Belt Reminder Light .....193
Light - Rear Fog Lamp Light .....38
Light - Safety Belt Reminder Light .....193
Light - Security System Light .....37
Light - Tow/Haul Mode Light .....37
Lighter .....153
Lights .....86
Lights - Approach Lights .....49, 58
Lights - Automatic Headlight System .....88
Lights - Bulb Replacement .....345
Lights - Center High-Mounted Stoplight .....343
Lights - Controls .....24
Lights - Dome Light .....90
Lights - Dome Lights Override Button .....24, 90
Lights - Front Fog Lights ..... 89, 342, 344
Lights - Hazard Warning Flasher .....114
Lights - Headlight High/Low Beam Control .....116
Lights - Illuminated Entry/Exit System .....91
Lights - Illuminated Exit .....49, 57
Lights - Instrument Cluster Warning Lights ..... 28
Lights - Instrument Panel Light Dimmer ..... 89
Lights - Interior Lights ..... 339
Lights - Lights On Reminder ..... 87
Lights - Lights On Reminder Light ..... 38
Lights - Main Switch ..... 86
Lights - Parking Lights ..... 344
Lights - Reading Lights ..... 91
Lights - Rear Fog Lights ..... 90
Loading - Certification Label ..... 273
Loading -
Maximum Front and Rear Axle Weights ..... 273
Loading - Tire and Loading Information Label ... 273
Loading - Vehicle Loading .....14, 272
Locks - Anti-lockout Feature ..... 135
Locks - Automatic Door Locks .....49, 52
Locks - Automatic Door Unlocks .....49, 53
Locks - Delayed Locking .....49, 56, 136
Locks - Manual Door Locks ..... 134
Locks - Power Door Locks ..... 135

# Index

## *L (Continued)*

Locks - Rear Door Security Locks .....137
Lubricant - Front Axle Lubricant .....315
Lubricant - Rear Axle Lubricant .....316
Lubricant - Transfer Case Lubricant .....315
Lubricants -
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants .....323
Luggage - Luggage Carrier .....149
Lumbar - Power Lumbar Control .....165

## *M*

Maintenance - Air Cleaner/Filter ..... 299, 321, 348
Maintenance - Automatic Transmission Dipstick 299
Maintenance - Automatic Transmission Fluid .....309
Maintenance - Battery .....299, 321
Maintenance - Brake Fluid Reservoir .....299
Maintenance - Brake Master Cylinder Fluid .....318
Maintenance - Checking and Adding Coolant ...362
Maintenance - Engine Coolant .....306, 323
Maintenance - Engine Coolant Reservoir .....17, 349
Maintenance - Engine Coolant Surge Tank .....299
Maintenance - Engine Oil ..... 300, 323, 349
Maintenance - Engine Oil Dipstick .....299
Maintenance - Engine Oil Fill Cap ..... 299
Maintenance - Front Axle Lubricant ..... 315
Maintenance - Heated Washer Fluid .....69, 119
Maintenance - Maintenance Guidelines ..... 288
Maintenance -
Maintenance When Trailer Towing ..... 284
Maintenance - Power Steering Fluid ..... 317
Maintenance - Power Steering Fluid Reservoir ... 299
Maintenance - Rear Axle Lubricant ..... 316
Maintenance -
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants ..... 323
Maintenance - Transfer Case Lubricant ..... 315
Maintenance - Windshield Washer Fluid ..... 320
Maintenance - Windshield Washer Reservoir ..... 299
Malfunction Indicator Light ..... 32
Memory - Memory Feature ..... 160
Memory Feature - Seat Position Recall .....49, 62
Menu - Vehicle Information Menu .....45, 71
Messages - Driver Information Center ..... 65
Metric Units ..... 46
Mirrors ..... 125
Mirrors - Automatic Inside Day/Night Mirror .... 128

AKENG44_Escalade Page 403 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



### *M (Continued)*

Mirrors - Curb View Assist Mirror .... 49, 59, 60, 127
Mirrors - Heated Mirror .....126, 343
Mirrors - Outside Mirror .....125
Mirrors - Park Tilt Mirrors .....49, 59
Mirrors - Power Folding Mirrors .....126
Mirrors - Power Mirrors .....125, 338
Mirrors - Vanity .....128
Modifications .....289
Multifunction Lever ..... 24, 111, 115

### *N*

Navigation - Navigation System .....110

### *O*

Object Detection -
Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist .....155
Odometer .....27
Off-Roading -
Driving in Mud, Sand, Snow or Ice .....261
Off-Roading - Driving in Water .....262
Off-Roading - Driving on Hills .....14, 256
Off-Roading -
Loading Your Vehicle for Off-Road Driving .....253
Off-Roading - Off-Road Driving ..... 251
Oil - Engine Oil .....300, 323, 349
Oil - Engine Oil Dipstick ..... 299
Oil - Engine Oil Life ..... 45
Oil - Oil Fill Cap ..... 299
Oil - Oil Pressure Warning Light ..... 28
Overhead - Luggage Carrier ..... 149
Overhead - Overhead Area and Roof ..... 145
Overhead - Sunroof .....146, 342
Overheating - Engine .....5, 359
Overheating -
Engine Overheat Protection Mode .....67, 362

### *P*

Parking - Parking a Trailer on Hills ..... 282
Parking - Parking Brake ..... 269
Parking - Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist ..... 155
Parking - Vehicle Parking ..... 262
Parking Lights ..... 344
Parts - Service Parts Identification Label ..... 335
Passenger Sensing System ..... 201
Passenger Sensing System -
System Operation with a Child Restraint ..... 204

# Index

## *P (Continued)*

Passenger Sensing System -
System Operation with Adult Passengers .....206
Pedals -
Adjustable Accelerator and Brake Pedals .....242
Pedals - Adjustable Accelerator and
Brake Pedals Control .....24
Power - Retained Accessory Power .....154
Power Outlet - Electrical Accessories .....84, 338
Pregnancy -
Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy .....192
Programmable Features .....49, 50
Programmable Features -
Approach Lights .....49, 58
Programmable Features -
Automatic Door Locks .....49, 52
Programmable Features -
Automatic Door Unlocks .....49, 53
Programmable Features - Display in English .....49
Programmable Features -
Keyless Entry Feedback ..... 49, 54, 55
Programmable Features -
Language Selection .....49, 51
Programmable Features -
Memory Seat Recall .....49, 62
Programmable Features -
Seat Exit Position Recall .....49, 60
Programmable Features -
Seat Exit Position Setup .....49, 61

## *R*

Rack - Luggage Carrier .....149
Radio .....104, 342
Radio - Antenna .....110
Radio - Anti-Theft Feature .....109
Radio - Audio Controls Mounted on
Steering Wheel .....24, 108, 113
Radio - Rear Seat Audio .....106
Rear - Rear Area Storage .....145
Rear - Rear Cargo Area .....138
Rear Air Conditioning/Heating - Automatic .....100
Rear Fog Lights .....90
Rear Window - Defogger .....103, 343, 344
Rear Window - Wiper/Washer .....120
Recirculation .....97

AKENG44_Escalade Page 405 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



## *R (Continued)*

Reclining -
Front Seatback Power Reclining Control .....164
Recovery Hooks .....389
Refrigerant .....349
Remote Keyless Entry .....232
Remote Keyless Entry - Feedback ..... 49, 54, 55
Remote Keyless Entry -
Transmitter Frequency Approval Code .....236
Restraint System - Warning Light .....193
Restraints - Air Bag .....194
Restraints - Anchors for Child Restraints with
Lower Attaching Points and Top Tether .....217
Restraints - Child Restraint Top Strap .....218
Restraints - Child Restraints .....208
Restraints - Head Restraints .....169
Restraints - Lap/Shoulder Belt .....186
Restraints - Older Children .....215
Restraints - Passenger Air Bag On/Off Indicator .207
Restraints - Passenger Sensing System .....201
Restraints - Replacing Safety Belts .....191
Restraints - Safety Belt Extension .....191
Restraints - Safety Belt Pretensioners .....194
Restraints - Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy ... 192
Restraints - Safety Belts .....6, 184
Restraints - Securing a Child Restraint with
Lower Attaching Points and Top Strap ..... 222
Restraints - Shoulder Belt Comfort Guides ..... 189
Restraints - Shoulder Belt Height Adjuster ..... 189
Restraints - Supplemental Restraints ..... 194
Rocking Your Vehicle ..... 388
Roof - Luggage Carrier ..... 149
Roof - Overhead Area and Roof ..... 145
Roof - Sunroof .....146, 342

## *S*

Safety - Air Bag ..... 194
Safety - Anchors for Child Restraints with
Lower Attaching Points and Top Tether ..... 217
Safety - Child Restraint Top Strap ..... 218
Safety - Child Restraints ..... 208
Safety - Important Safety Precautions .....6-20
Safety - Lap/Shoulder Belt ..... 186
Safety - Older Children ..... 215
Safety - Passenger Air Bag On/Off Indicator ..... 207
Safety - Passenger Sensing System ..... 201

# Index

## *S (Continued)*

Safety - Replacing Safety Belts .....191
Safety - Safety Belt Extension .....191
Safety - Safety Belt Pretensioners .....194
Safety - Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy .....192
Safety - Safety Belts .....6, 184
Safety - Securing a Child Restraint with Lower Attaching Points and Top Strap .....222
Safety - Shoulder Belt Comfort Guides .....189
Safety - Shoulder Belt Height Adjuster .....189
Safety - Supplemental Restraints .....194
Safety - Trailer Towing Safety Chains .....281
Safety Belts - Warning Light .....193
Seats - Easy Entry Seat .....174
Seats - Folding Second Row Seats .....172
Seats - Folding Third Row Seatbacks .....179
Seats - Front Seatback Power Reclining Control .....164
Seats - Head Restraints .....169
Seats - Heated and Cooled Front Seats .....167
Seats - Heated Seats .....166, 168
Seats - Power Lumbar Control .....165
Seats - Power Seat Controls .....160, 164
Seats - Rear Seat Armrest .....151
Seats - Rear Seats .....338
Seats - Removable Rear Seat .....182
Seats - Seat Controls .....164
Seats - Seat Exit Position Recall .....49, 60
Seats - Seat Exit Position Setup .....49, 61
Seats - Seat Position Recall .....49, 62
Seats - Second Row Seats .....170
Seats - Third Row Seat .....179
Security - Theft Deterrent System .....230
Security System Light .....37
Sensor .....99
Service - Service Parts Identification Label .....335
Shade - Sun Visors .....145
Shifting - Gearshift Lever .....24, 114
Shifting - Shift Lock Control System .....250
Solar Sensor .....99
Sound System .....104, 342
Sound System - Antenna .....110
Sound System - Anti-Theft Feature .....109
Sound System - Rear Seat Audio .....106

## *S (Continued)*

Sound System -
Steering Wheel Audio Controls ..... 24, 108, 113
Spare - Spare Tire .....332, 387
Spare - Spare Tire Secondary Latch System .....383
Spare Tire ..... 5, 18, 366, 372
Spare Tire -
Storing Tire and Jacking Equipment .....377
Spark Plugs .....348
Specifications .....348
Specifications - Component Specifications .....348
Specifications -
Replacement Bulb Specifications .....347
Speed - Average Speed .....45
Speedometer .....27
Stability - Stabilitrak System .....80
Starting - Cold Weather Starting .....241
Starting - Engine Flooding .....241
Starting - Engine Starting .....239
Starting - Engine Starting Problems .....240
Starting - Failure to Start .....240
Starting - Ignition Switch .....113, 236
Starting - Jump Starting .....354
Starting - Starting Instructions ..... 239
Steering ..... 266
Steering - Power Steering ..... 266
Steering - Power Steering Fluid ..... 317
Steering - Power Steering Fluid Reservoir ..... 299
Steering Column - Controls Mounted on
Steering Wheel/Column ..... 111
Steering Wheel - Audio Controls .....24, 108, 113
Steering Wheel - Controls Mounted on
Steering Wheel/Column ..... 111
Storage ..... 151
Storage - Cupholders ..... 152
Storage - Glove Box ..... 24, 151
Storage - Rear Area Storage ..... 145
Storage - Rear Cargo Area ..... 138
Storing Tire and Jacking Equipment ..... 377
Stuck - If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck ..... 388
Stuck - Recovery Hooks ..... 389
Sun - Sun Visors ..... 145
Sun - Sunroof .....146, 342
Supports - Power Lumbar Control ..... 165
Suspension ..... 270

# Index

## *S (Continued)*

Suspension - Automatic Level Control .....270
Switch - Ignition Switch .....113, 236
Switchbank - Instrument Panel Switchbank ...24, 91
Switches - Instrument Panel Switchbank .....24, 91

## *T*

Tachometer .....28
Tank - Filling the Fuel Tank .....294
Temperature - Coolant Temperature Gage .....26
Temperature - Temperature Control .....93, 102
Temperature Sensor .....99
Terminals - Remote Negative Battery Terminal ..299
Terminals - Remote Positive Battery Terminal ....299
Theft Deterrent - Theft Deterrent System .....230
Timer .....44
Tires .....325
Tires - Changing a Flat ..... 5, 18, 348, 366
Tires - Changing the Flat Tire .....372
Tires - Inspection and Rotation .....328
Tires - Spare Tire .....5, 18, 332, 366, 372, 387
Tires - Spare Tire Secondary Latch System .....383
Tires - Tire and Loading Information Label ..... 273
Tires - Tire Chains ..... 332
Tires - Tire Inflation ..... 326
Tires - Tire Replacement ..... 330
Tires - Tire Stowage ..... 5, 18, 366, 372, 377
Tires - Wheel Alignment and Tire Balancing ..... 333
Tires - Wheels and Tires ..... 351
Torque - Engine Torque ..... 348
Tow/Haul Button ..... 24
Tow/Haul Mode ..... 278
Tow/Haul Mode - Indicator Light ..... 37
Towing .....5, 16, 358
Towing - Maintenance When Trailer Towing .... 284
Towing - Recreational Vehicle Towing ..... 285
Towing - Tow/Haul Button ..... 24
Towing - Tow/Haul Mode ..... 278
Towing - Trailer Brakes ..... 281
Towing - Trailer Towing ..... 274
Towing - Trailer Towing Hitches ..... 279
Towing - Trailer Towing Safety Chains ..... 281
Towing - Trailer Turn Signals ..... 281

AKENG44_Escalade Page 409 Wednesday, July 16, 2008 12:22 PM



## *T (Continued)*

Towing - Trailer Wiring Harness .....283
Towing -
With All Four Wheels on the Ground .....285
Towing - With Two Wheels on the Ground
and Two Wheels Up on a Dolly .....285
Traction .....265
Traction - Locking Rear Axle .....266
Traction - Stabilitrak System .....80
Traction - Stabilitrak Traction Control .....82
Trailer - Hitches .....279
Trailer - Parking a Trailer on Hills .....282
Trailer - Safety Chains .....281
Trailer - Trailer Brakes .....281
Trailer - Trailer Towing .....274
Trailer - Wiring Harness .....283
Trailering -
Maintenance When Trailer Towing .....284
Trailering - Trailer Turn Signals .....281
Transfer Case - All-Wheel Drive .....250
Transfer Case - Driving Guidelines For
All-Wheel Drive Vehicles .....250
Transfer Case - Transfer Case Lubricant ..... 315
Transmission ..... 243
Transmission - Automatic .....11, 243, 323
Transmission - Automatic Transmission Dipstick 299
Transmission - Automatic Transmission Fluid .... 309
Transmission -
Automatic Transmission Manual Shift Mode ... 247
Transmission - Shift Lock Control System ..... 250
Transmitter - Battery Replacement ..... 235
Transmitter - Remote Keyless Entry ..... 232
Transmitter - Transmitter Frequency
Approval Code ..... 236
Transmitter - Transmitter Range ..... 234
Trip Odometer ..... 27
Turn Signal ..... 115
Turn Signal - Indicator ..... 26
Turn Signal - Trailer Turn Signals ..... 281

## *U*

Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist ..... 155
Units - English/Metric ..... 46

# Index


## *V*

Vehicle - New Vehicle Break-In Period .....227
Vehicle - Rocking .....388
Vehicle Identification Number .....335
Ventilation - Air Vents .....24
Visors - Sun Visors .....145

## *W*

Warning Light - Air Bag Light .....35, 201
Warning Light -
Engine Oil Pressure Warning Light .....28
Warning Light - Lights On Reminder Light .....38
Warning Light - Malfunction Indicator Light .....32
Warning Light - Security System Light .....37
Warning Lights .....28
Washer - Heated Washer Fluid .....69, 119
Washer - Rear Window .....120
Washer - Windshield .....118
Washer - Windshield Washer Fluid .....320
Washer - Windshield Washer Reservoir ..... 299
Weight - Maximum Front and
Rear Axle Weights ..... 273
Wheels ..... 333
Wheels - Wheel Alignment and Tire Balancing .. 333
Wheels - Wheel Nut Torque ..... 348
Wheels - Wheel Replacement ..... 333, 348
Wheels - Wheels and Tires ..... 351
Windows ..... 129
Windows - Express Down Feature ..... 130
Windows - Power ..... 130
Windows - Window Lockout Switch ..... 132
Windshield - Rain Sensitive Wipers ..... 117
Windshield - Washer ..... 118
Windshield - Wipers ..... 116
Wiper - Rear Window ..... 120
Wipers - Rain Sensitive ..... 117
Wipers - Windshield ..... 116
Wiring - Trailer Wiring Harness ..... 283